



Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

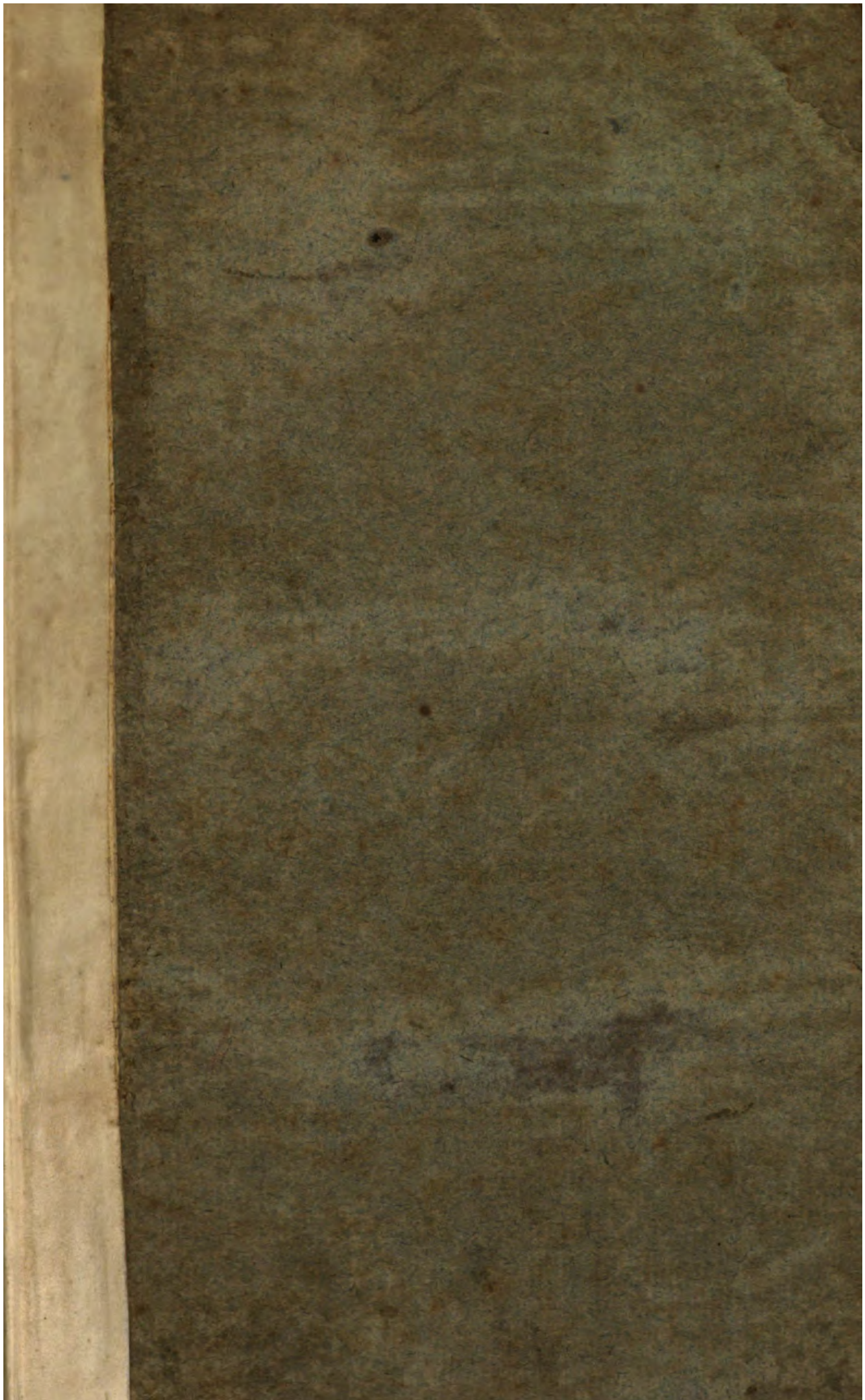
This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.



Post. from Danning

Business

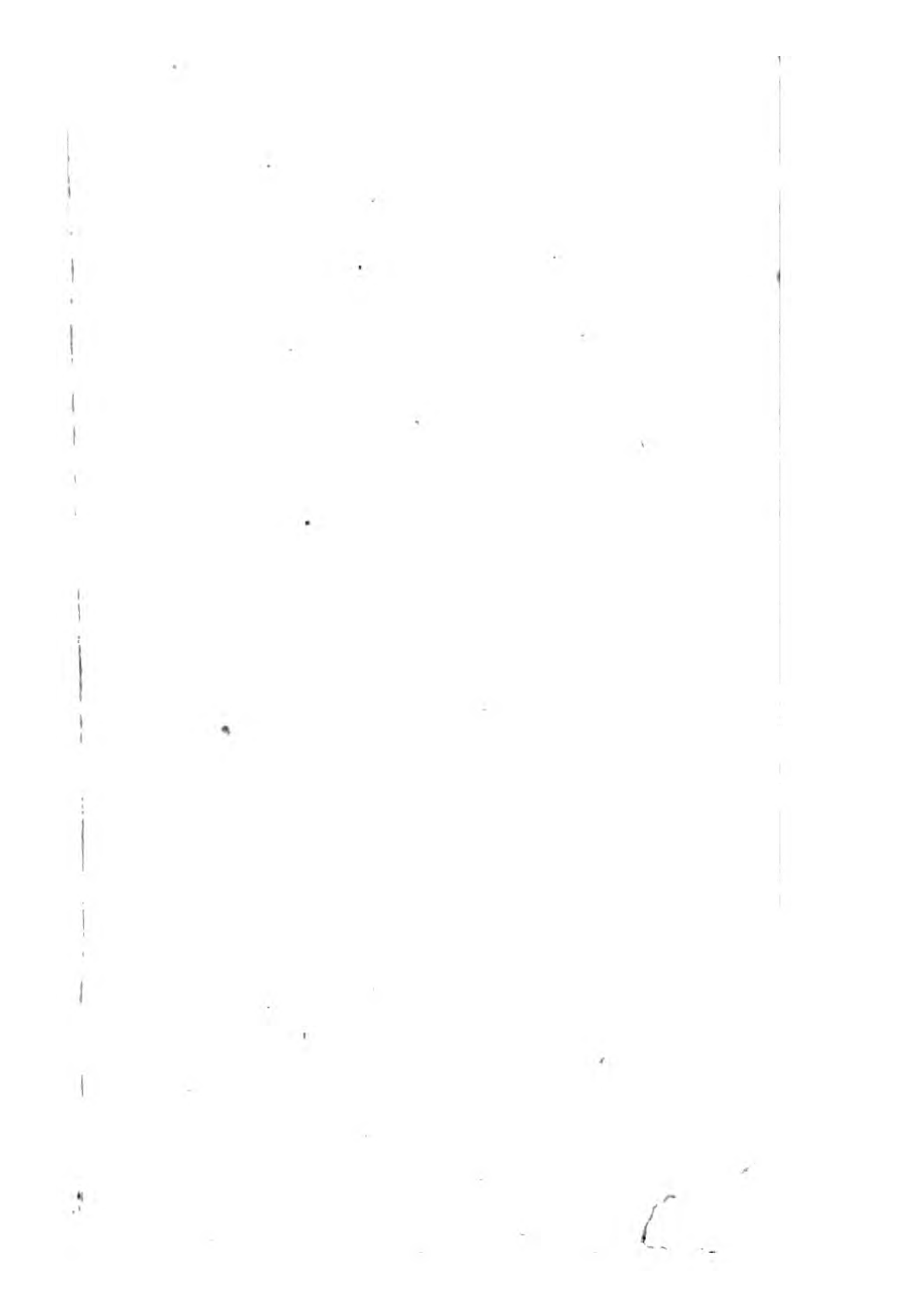


7/6

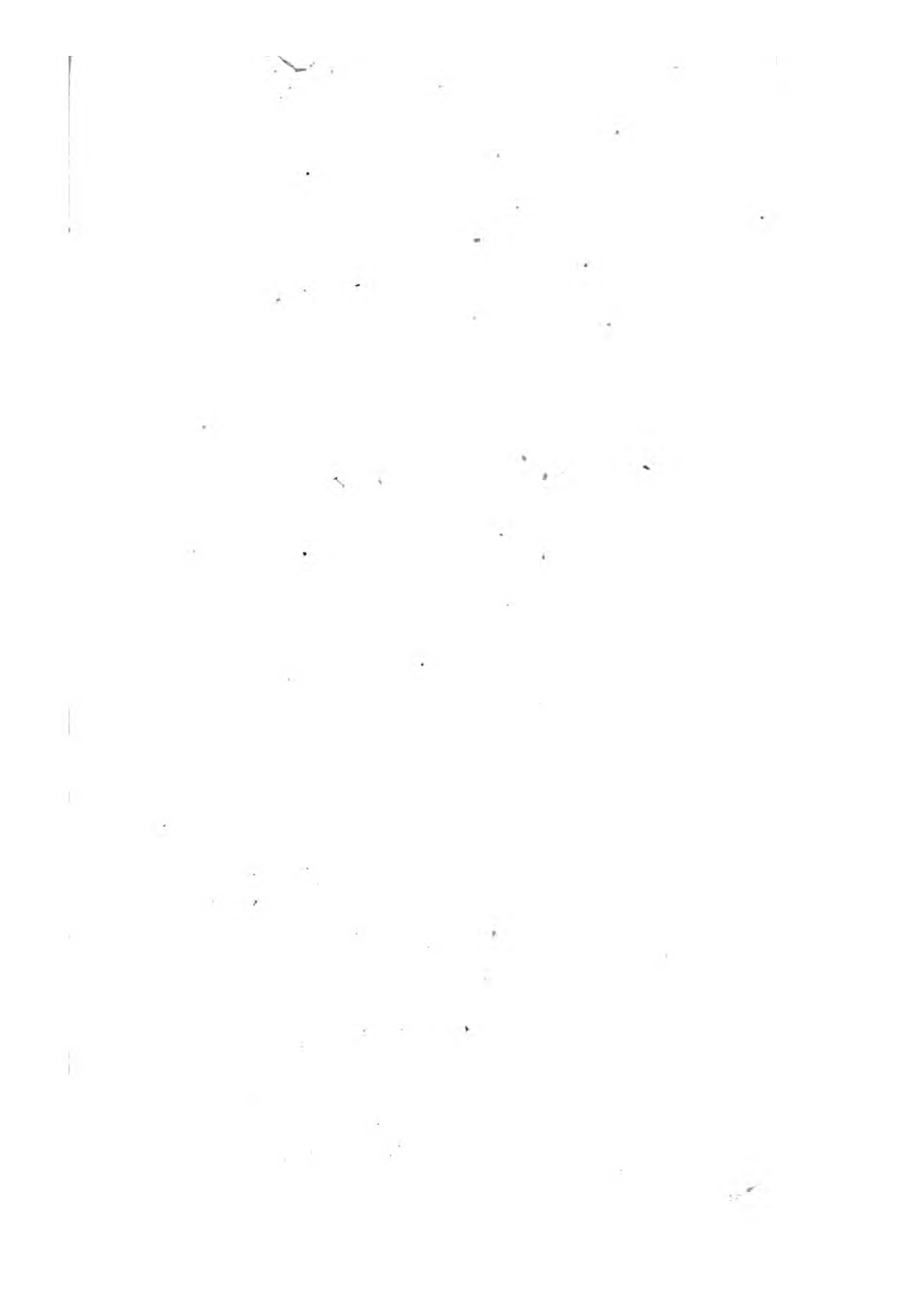
23175

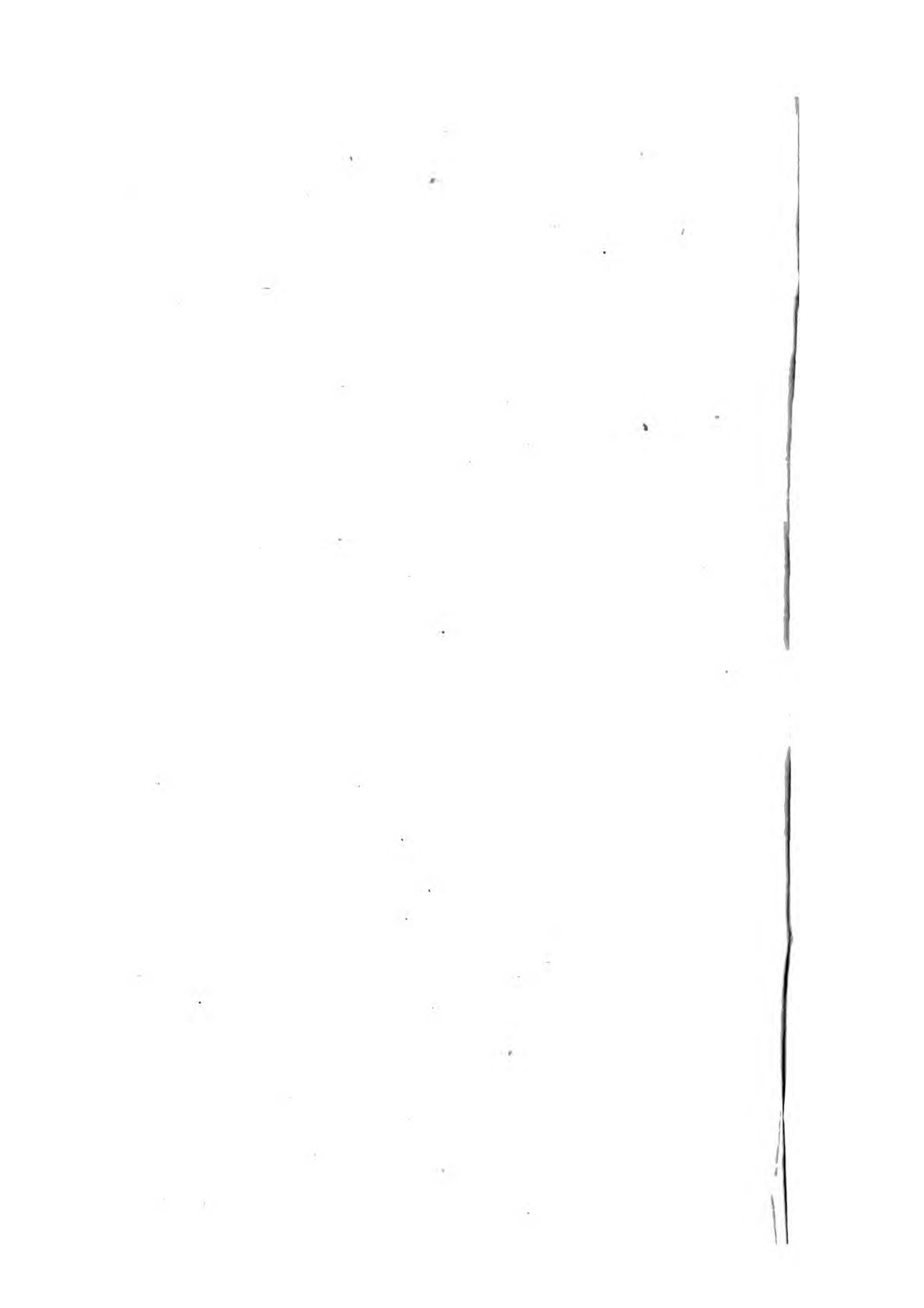
e. 24











REGULATIONS
FOR THE
PRUSSIAN
CAVALRY.

TRANSLATED FROM
The GERMAN ORIGINAL.

Miles ab exercitijs armorum, vel novellus, vel jam vetustus, cessare non debet, cui pugnandum est pro salute propria, & libertate communi; præsertim cum antiqua sit, prudensque sententia, omnes artes in meditatione consistere.

VEGETIUS.

LONDON:
Printed by J. Haberkorn,
for the TRANSLATOR,

And Sold by
R. and J. Doddsley, Pall-Mall—W. Shropshire, New Bond-Street.
— J. Millan, Charing-Cross. — P. Vaillant, J. Nourse,
D. Wilson and Durban, Strand.—T. Osborne, and J. Shipton,
Gray's-Inn.—J. Rivington and J. Fletcher, Pater noster-
Row—J. Brackstone, Cornhill.—G. Faulkner, Dublin.—
Kincaid and Donaldson, Edinburgh.

M DCC LVII.



TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE

The EARL of ALBEMARLE,

MAJOR-GENERAL of His MAJESTY'S Forces,

COLONEL of the KING'S own Regiment of DRAGOONS,

AND

LORD of the Bed-Chamber, to His ROYAL HIGHNESS
the DUKE, &c.

MY LORD,

THE military Discipline of so great a Monarch, and so accomplished a General, as the KING OF PRUSSIA, can be addressed to no Patron with more Propriety, than to Your LORDSHIP.—I here judge for my Readers, secure of an universal Concurrence; and esteem myself highly honoured in this Opportunity afforded me, of assuring You, that I am, with the utmost Respect,

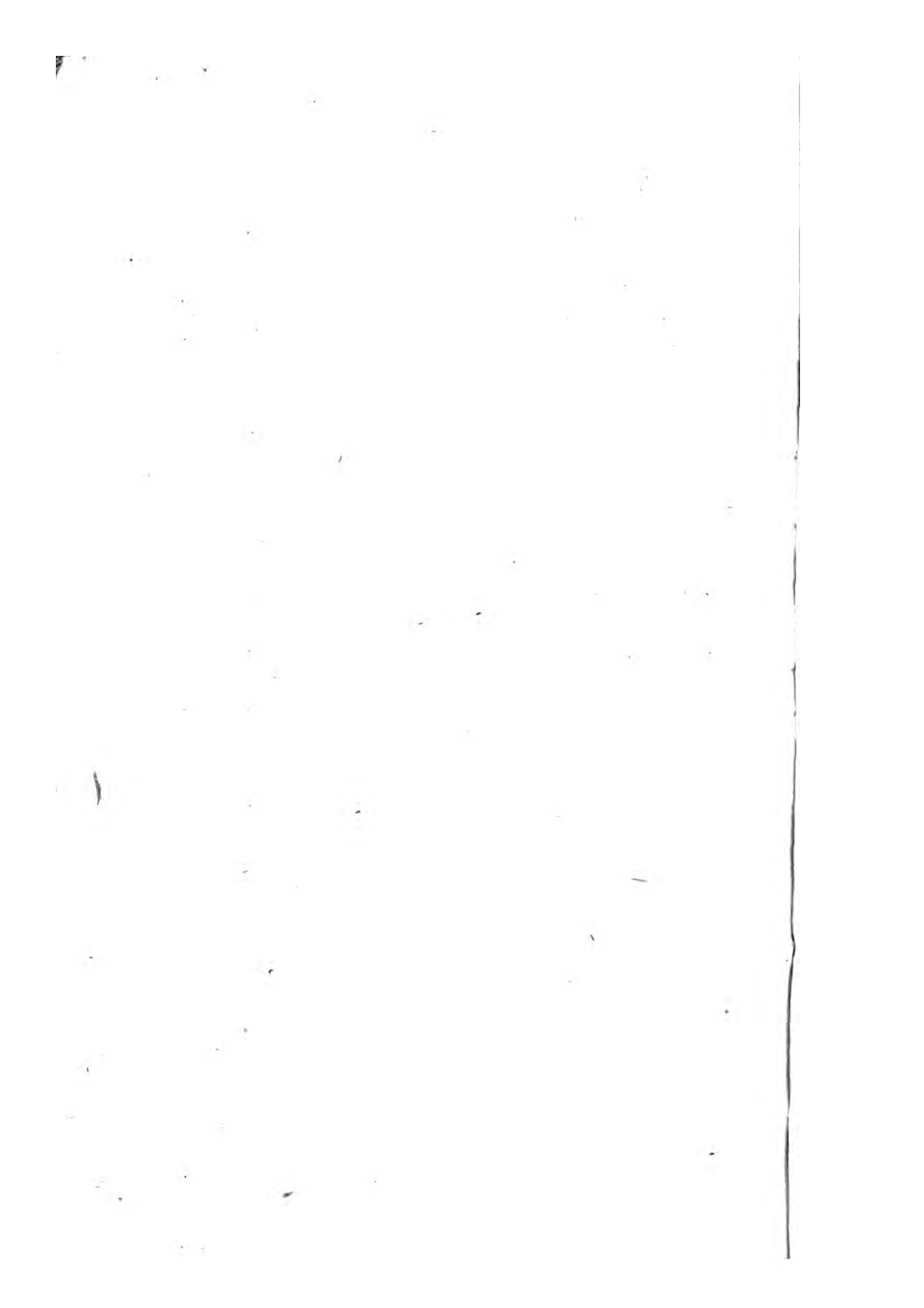
Your LORDSHIP'S

much obliged,

and obedient Servant,

LONDON,
May 14, 1757.

WM. FAUCITT.





A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

His Royal Highness the Duke of
CUMBERLAND.

A.

EARL of *Albemarle*,
for himself and Regiment.
Earl of *Ancram*, for himself and Regiment.
Lieut. Gen. *Anstruther*.
Col. *Anstruther*.
Lieut. Col. *Armstrong*, 18th Regiment.
Capt. *Alston* 1st Regiment. of Foot-guards.
Capt. *Ackland*, 12th Regt.
Sir *Robt. Arnott*, 26th.
Capt. *Agnew*, 58th.
Lord *Allen*.
William Adair Esq;
Samuel Armitage Esq;
Lieut. *George Ainslie*, 2d Troop of Horse Grenadier-Guards.
Lieut. *P. Anslie*, Ditto.
Lieut. *Anderson*, Royal Regiment. of artillery.
Lieut. *Arblaster*, 6th Regt. of Dragoons.

Cornet *Abercombie*, 3d Regt. of Dragoons.
Ensign *Amherst*, 1st Regiment. of Foot-guards.
Ensign *Augustus Alt*, 8th Regiment. of Foot.
Mr. *Aked*.

B.

The Duke of *Bedford*.
Lord *Geo. Beauclerk*.
Col. *Belford*.
Marquis of *Blandford*.
Lieut. Col. *Burges*, 3d Regiment. of Foot-guards.
Lieut. Col. *Blomer*, Ditto.
Lieut. Col. *Boden*, Coldstream Regiment.
Major *N. Bateman*, 1st troop of Horse-guards.
Major *D. Berkeley*.
Major *Beckwith*, 20th Regiment.

Major

A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

Major Bradshaigh, of the 1st troop of Horse-Grenadier-Guards.	Ensign Blomberg 33d Regt.
Capt. Brown, royal Regiment of Horse-Guards.	Ensign Brown, Ditto.
Capt. Burton, of the 1st Regiment of Dragoons.	Walter Borlace, Esq;
Capt. Bowles, 2d troop of Horse-guards.	Geo. Buck, Esq;
Capt. Brace, 1st Regt. of Dragoon-guards.	Wm. Brooke, Esq;
Capt. Barber 1st Regt. of Dragoons.	Mr. Boyd.
Hon. Capt. R. Brudenell, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.	Mr. Bullock.
Capt. Baugh, Ditto.	Mr. Byron, <i>Nassau-street.</i>
Capt. Brereton, Ditto.	Mr. Geo. Barton, <i>Louth.</i>
Capt. Boisfragon, 8th Regt. of Foot.	Mr. Aris, <i>Birmingham.</i>
Capt. Backhouse, Ditto.	C.
Capt. Binden, 33d Regt.	The Earl of Cholmondeley.
Capt. G. Banks.	Lord Cadogan.
Capt. Bingham, 23d Regt.	Lord Cathcart.
Capt. Barnes.	Lieut Gen. Campbell.
Capt. Brereton, 12th Regt.	Lieut. Gen. Cholmondeley.
Lieut. Beckwith, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-Guards.	Major Gen. Conway.
Lieut. Borradale, King's own Regt.	Col. Cæsar.
Lieut. Borrowes, 3d Regt. of Dragoons.	Lord Frederick Cavendish, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
Lieut. Brittan, Ditto.	Lieut. Col. Carey, Ditto.
Lieut. Brown.	Lieut. Col. Clavering, Ditto.
Cornet Brudenell, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-Guards.	Lieut. Col. J. Crauford, 13th Regt.
Cornet Ball, 3d Regt. of Dragoons.	Lieut Col. M. Campbell, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
Ensign Bishopp, Coldstream Regt.	Lieut. Col. R. Campbell, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards.
Ensign Baynton, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards.	Lieut. Col. Cunningham, Ditto.
	Lieut. Col. Crump, 58th Regt.
	Major Cook, 8th Regt. of Foot.
	Major Carpenter.
	J. Calcraft, Esq;
	Capt. Callis, 1st Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
	Capt.

A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Capt. Chauncy, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards. | Col. Durand. |
| Capt. Carleton, 1st. Regt. of Foot-guards. | Lieut. Col. Deane. |
| Capt. Cowper, Ditto. | Lieut. Col. DeCofne, Coldstream Regt. |
| Capt. Cattle, Ditto. | Lieut. Col. Defaguliers, Royal artillery. |
| Capt. Caswall, Coldstream Regt. | Major Donnelan, 8th Regt. of Foot. |
| Capt. Cox. | Major Daulhat, 33d Regt. |
| Capt. Chabbert, 12th Regt. | Major Desbrisay, 50th. |
| Capt. Corrance, 8th Regt. of Foot. | Capt. Draper, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards. |
| Capt. Cleiland, Ditto. | The Earl of Dunmore, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. |
| Capt. Corneille, 18th Regt. | Capt. Geo. Davis. |
| Capt. Cope, 33d. | Capt. Darby, of Major Gen. Richbell's Foot. |
| Lieut. Cox, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-guards. | Capt. Delgarno, 12th Regt. |
| Lieut. Crosbie, 33d Regt. | Capt. Delaune, 20th. |
| Lieut. Cotton, Ditto. | Capt. Drummond, 33d. |
| Lieut. Creed, Ditto. | Capt. Dundas, 34th. |
| Lieut. Charlton, 20th Regt. | Tho. Darby, Esq; |
| Brigadier Crafter, 2d troop of Horse-guards. | Hugh Dubbieg, Esq; Engineer. |
| Cornet Caulfield, 3d Regt. of Dragoon guards. | Lieut. Dickens, 6th Regt. of Dragoons. |
| Cornet Colhoun, 2d Regt. of Dragoons. | Lieut. Duckenfield, 10th Ditto. |
| Ensign Cathcart, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. | Lieut. Dudgeon, 8th Regt. of Foot. |
| Ensign Campbell Ditto. | Ensign De Salis, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards. |
| Ensign Culliford, 8th Regt. Foot. | Ensign David, Ditto. |
| Ensign Coxeter, 33d Regt. | Ensign Deering, Ditto. |
| Mr. Cock, Colchester. | Ensign Delaval, Coldstream Ditto. |
| | Ensign Denter. |
| D. | Ensign Downes, 8th Regt. of Foot. |
| Lord Delawarr. | Ensign Duke, 33d. Ditto. |
| Major Gen. Dury. | Mr. |
| Major Gen. Dilkes. | |

A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

Mr. Dunwoody, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Mr. Robert Doubleday.

E.

Gen. Elliot.
 Major Gen. Ellifon.
 Col. Elliot.
 Major East, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Major Eccles.
 Major Erskine, 26th Regt.
 Capt. Edmonstoune, 33d.
 Capt. Edwards.
 Capt. J. Ellis.
 Brigadier Egerton, 2d Troop of Horse-guards.

F.

Col. Fitzwilliams.
 Lieut. Col. Forrester, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Lieut. Col. Furbar, Ditto.
 Lieut. Col. Fredrick, Ditto.
 Major Forbes, royal Regt. of Horse-guards.
 Major Fitz-Thomas, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Major Flight, royal Artillery.
 Major Furye, 51st Regt.
 Capt. Ferguson, 2d. Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Honble. Capt. Fitz-Roy, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Capt. Fearson, 20th Regt.
 Capt. Joseph Fish.
 Wm. Fellows, Esq;

James Foreman, Esq;
 Lieut. Folliott, 18th Regt.
 Ensign Fauquier, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.

Ensign Fitz-Patrick, 33d Regt.

Mr. Fordyce.
 Mr. Duncan Forbes.
 Mr. Geo. Faulkner, *Dublin.*

G.

Col. Griffin, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Lieut. Col. Gore, Ditto.
 Lieut. Col. Gansell, Coldstream Regt.
 Capt. Gould, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Capt. Gould, 23d Regt.
 Capt. Gilman, 8th Regt. of Foot.
 Capt. Graydon, 58th.
 Sir Alex. Guilmore.
 Robert Gardiner, Esq; Commissary.
 Lieut. Gore, 33d Regt.
 Lieut. Gordon, Ditto.
 Lieut. Gardner, 12th Regt.
 Lieut. Grey, independent Companies in *South-Carolina.*
 Cornet Guion, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Ensign Gorry, 33d Regt.
 Mr. Garth.
 Mr. Gunson.
 Mr. Grammar.

H.

A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

H.

Lieut. Gen. Hawley.
 Earl of Home.
 Gen. Hopson.
 Lord Charles Hay.
 Col. Howard.
 Col. Hodgson.
 Lord Howe.
 Lieut. Col. Harvey, 6th
 . Regt. of Dragoons.
 Lieut. Col. Haldane, 3d
 . Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Major Hepburn, 6th Regt.
 of Dragoons.
 Honble Major Howe, 58th
 . Regt.
 Major Shuchburgh Hewett.
 Capt. Harrington, 2d troop
 of Horse-grenadiers.
 Capt. Hotham, 1st Regt. of
 Foot-guards.
 Capt. Hale, 3d Ditto.
 Capt. Hudson, Ditto.
 Capt. Hamilton, Ditto.
 Capt. Husley, Coldstream
 . Regt.
 Capt. Hestie.
 Capt. Hargreaves, Brigade
 Major, in *North-Brittain*.
 Capt. C. Hamilton, 8th
 . Regt. of Foot.
 Capt. D. Hamilton, 31st.
 Capt. Harvey, 33d.
 Matthew Henderfon, Esq;
 Lieut. Hartnell, 6th Regt.
 of Dragoons.
 Lieut. Hamilton, 34th Regt.

Lieut. Hayes, 58th.
 Cornet Hope, 1st Regt. of
 Dragoon-guards.
 Ensign Howard, 1st Regt.
 of Foot-guards.
 Ensign Hart.
 Mr. Hesse.

J.

Col. Jefferyes.
 Lieut. Col. Johnston, Royal
 . Regt. of Horse-guards.
 Capt. J. Jones, 3d Regt. of
 Foot-guards.
 Capt. D. Jones, Ditto.
 Capt. Jones, 1st Ditto.
 Capt. Wm. Adolphus John-
 son.
 Lieut. Jones, 33d Regt.
 Ensign Johnson, 3d Regt. of
 Foot-guards.
 Cornet Jones, 10th Regt.
 of Dragoons.
 Doctor Jackson, *Halifax,*
Yorkshire.
 Mr. R. Jack.

K.

Col. Kingsley.
 Honble. Lieut. Col. Keppel.
 Capt. Kellaway, 26th Regt.
 Honble. Lieut. Keppel.
 Lieut. Kemptie, 58th.
 Cornet Knight, 3d Regt. of
 Dragoon-guards.
 Ensign Kingsley, 3d Regt.
 of Foot guards.

Ensign

A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

Ensign Mitchelburn Knox. Col. Montgomery.
Messrs. Kincaid and Donaldson, *Edinburgh*. Lieut. Col. Maitland, 1st
Regt. of Foot guards.

L.

<p>Lieut. Col. La-fauville, 8th. Regt. of Foot. Lieut. Col. Lambert, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards. Lord Geo. Lenox. Capt. Lawley, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards. Capt. Lister, Coldstream Regt. Capt. Lee, 12th Regt. Capt. Leland, 58th. Honble. Tho. Leslie. The Revd. Dr. Lee, of <i>Halifax, Yorkshire</i>. The Revd. Mr. Lister, of Ditto. The Revd. Mr. Lamplugh, of <i>Cottingley</i>. —Le-grand Esq; Samuel Lister Esq; of <i>Horton</i>. —Lister Esq; of <i>Skipton</i>. Lieut. Lane, 18th Regt. Cornet Legard, 2d. Regt. of Dragoon guards. Cornet Lovel, 6th Regt. of Dragoons.</p>	<p>Lieut. Col. Moncrieff, 26th Regt. Lieut. Col. Mompeffon, 50th. Major Mocher, 2d Troop of Horse-grenadiers. Major Mackay, 5th Regt. of Foot. Major Morgan, 52d. Major Marriot, 6th Regt. of Dragoons. Major Marlay. Major Montolieu, 2d Troop of Horse-guards. Major M'Dowall, 32d Regt. Wm. Mills Esq; Capt. Milbanke, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards. Capt. M'Donald, Ditto. Capt. Mordaunt, 10th Regt. of Dragoons. Capt. Manlove, 1st Regt. Foot-guards. Capt. Monson, Ditto. Capt. Mathew, Coldstream Regt. Capt. Martin, Ditto. Capt. Mollineaux, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. Capt. Marriot, Marines. Capt. Maxwell, 20th Regt. Capt. M'Dowall, Ditto. Sir Kenith Mackenzie, 26th. Capt. Mony-penny, 33d. Capt. Morris, Ditto. Capt. Morris, 55th Regt. Lieut. Mansell, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.</p>
---	--

M.

<p>Duke of Marlborough. Sir John Mordaunt. Lord Malpas.</p>	<p>Capt.</p>
---	--------------

A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

<p>Lieut. Masters, 8th Regt. of Foot. Lieut. Marshall, Ditto. Ensign Morrison, Ditto. Ensign Hugh Mackay.</p>	<p>Lieut. Col. Geo. Lane Parker Ditto. Lieut. Col. Preston, 20th Regt. Lieut. Col. Pole, 23d. Lieut. Col. Pitt, 59th. Major Phillips, 13th. Major Prescott, 33d. Capt. Pechell, 2d Troop of Horse-grenadiers.</p>
--	---

N.

<p>Major Gen. Napier. Col. Noel, Coldstream Regt. Major Napier. Capt. J. Neale, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. Capt. Wm. Napier, 23d Regt. Capt. Nuttal, 58th. Lord Newbattle. Ensign Needham, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. Ensign Richard Nesbitt. Ensign James Nesbitt.</p>	<p>Capt. Pownall, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards. Capt. Parr, 20th. Capt. Preston, 26th. Capt. Pollock, 33d. Capt. Pool, Ditto. Capt. Phillips, royal artillery. Jonathan Pytts, Esq; Charles Phillips, Esq; Gilbert Pilkington Esq; Abraham Prado Esq; Lieut. Penter, Buffs. Brigadier Pocock, 2d Troop of Horse-guards. Ensign Pouncett, 33d Regt.</p>
--	--

O.

<p>Capt. Ogilvie, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. Capt. Oakes, 51st Regt. Capt. Richard Onslow. Capt. Cooke Otway. Capt. Joseph Otway. Ensign Owen, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. Mr. Ogilvie.</p>	<p>Ensign Pouncett, 33d Regt.</p>
--	-----------------------------------

R.

<p style="text-align: center;">P.</p> <p>Earl of Pembroke. Lieut. Col. Prideaux, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. Lieut. Col. Pearson, 1st Ditto.</p>	<p>Earl of Rothes. Col. Rofs. Col. Robinson, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards. Lieut. Col. Rufane, 24th Regt. Sir Wm. Ruffel, 1st Regt. Foot-guards. Sir Cecil Ray. Capt. Ramsden, royal Regt. of Horse-guards. Lord Rutherford, Ditto. Capt.</p>
---	--

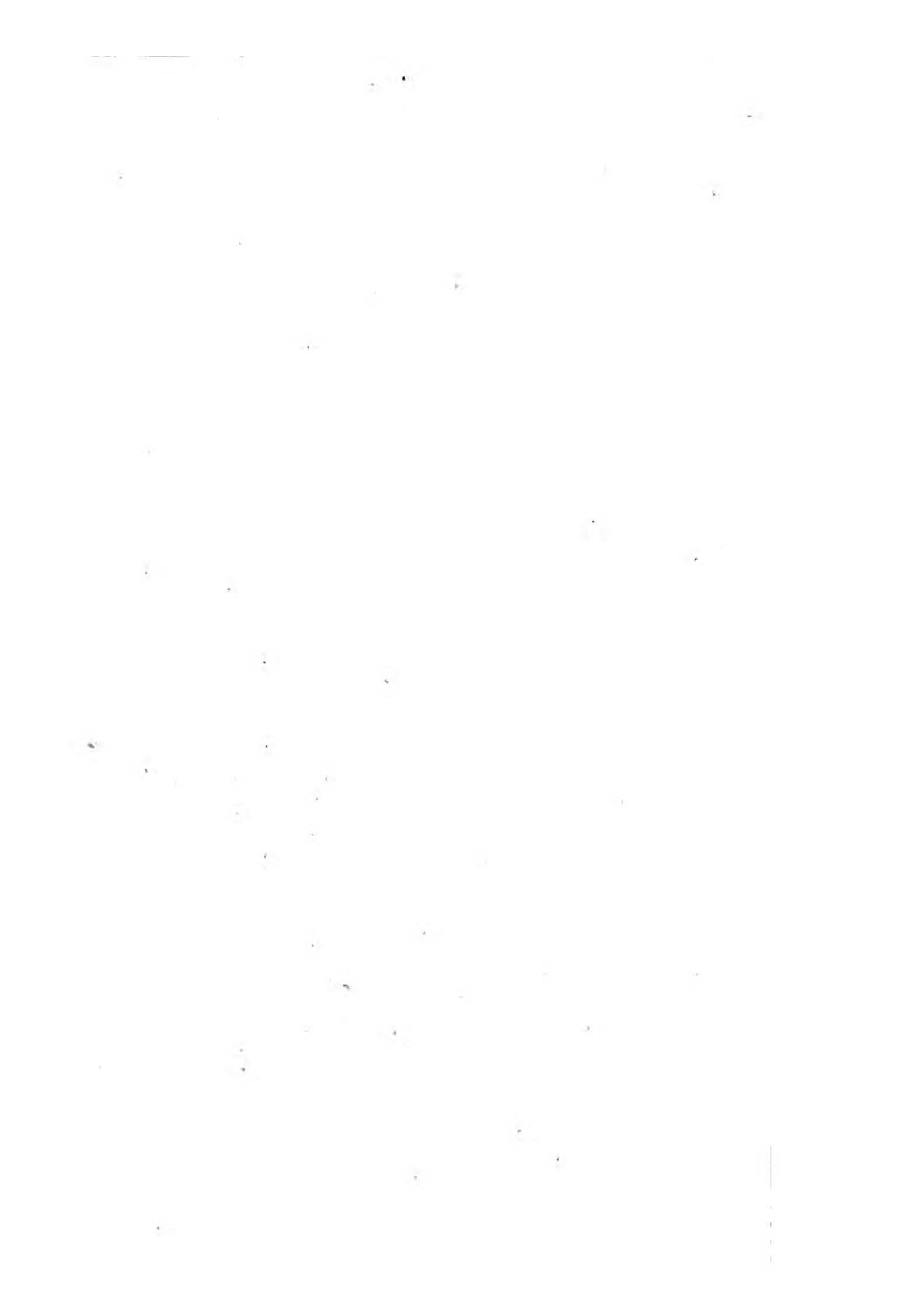
A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p> Capt. Richardson, 1st Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Capt. Reynolds, 3d Regt. of Ditto.
 Capt. Robins, 6th Regt. of Dragoons.
 Capt. Rickson, 19th Regt.
 Capt. Henry Rogers.
 Capt. Ridley, 23d Regt.
 Capt. Rayner, 33d.
 Capt. Reynolds, 58th.
 Geo. Ross Esq;
 Samuel Reynardson Esq; <i>Ormond-Street.</i>
 Lieut. Tho. Riggs, 26th Regt.
 Lieut. James Rolt.
 Ensign Rolt, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Ensign Reade, 8th Regt. of Foot.
 Ensign Ruthven, 33d.
 Ensign Roberts, Ditto.
 Mr. James Rivington. </p> | <p> Honble. Capt. Hugh Somerville, Ditto.
 Capt. Suttee, 6th Regt. of Dragoons.
 Capt. Style, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Capt. J. Smith, 3d Ditto.
 Capt. F. Smith, Ditto.
 Capt. James Stewart, Secretary to the Commander in chief, in <i>Scotland.</i>
 Capt. St. Clair.
 Capt. Skene, 26th Regt. Brigadier Stephens, 2d troop of Horse-guards.
 Lieut. Smallman, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Lieut. Thomas Stewart.
 Lieut. Scott, 8th Regt. of Foot.
 Lieut. Spong, 20th.
 Cornet Sanger, 3d. Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Honble. Cornet Sandys, 6th Regt. of Dragoons.
 Honble. Ensign St. John, Coldstream Regt.
 Ensign Stainforth, 18th Regt.
 Ensign Strong, 26th. </p> |
| <p>S.</p> | |
| <p> Lord Geo. Sackville.
 Lord Stanhope.
 Gen. Stuart.
 Lieut. Col. Sandford, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Lieut. Col. Sebright, Ditto.
 Honble. Lieut. Col. Sandys, Coldstream Regt.
 Lieut. Col. Scott, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Capt. Slaughter, 2d Troop of Horse-guards.
 Honble. Capt. James Somerville, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-guards. </p> | <p> T.
 Capt. Tryon, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Capt. Thornton, Ditto.
 Capt. Thornton, Coldstream Regt.
 Capt. Tath, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Capt. Trollope, 8th Regt. of Foot. </p> |
| | <p>Capt.</p> |

A List of SUBSCRIBERS.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Capt. Templer, 26th.
 Lieut. Turton, Royal Regt. of Horse-guards.
 Lieut. Tufnall, Ditto.
 Lieut. Tench, 11th Regt. of Foot.
 Mr. Taylor, Agent.
 Cornet Travell, 2d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Ensign Townshend, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Ensign F. Twisleton, 3d Regt. Ditto.
 Ensign F. Twisleton, Ditto.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">U.</p> <p>Lieut. Col. Urmston, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Lieut. Veffell, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">W.</p> <p>Lord Weymouth
 Lieut. Gen. Wolfe.
 Col. Whitmore.
 Col. Watson.
 Col. Wolfe.
 Honble. Lieut. Col. West, 1st troop of Horse-guards.
 Lieut. Col. Wade, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Lieut. Col. Winn, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Lieut. Col. Wilkinson, 57th Regt.
 Capt. Winde, 1st Regt. of Dragoons.
 Capt. Whitmore, 6th Ditto.
 Capt. Wilson, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.</p> | <p>Capt. Wickham, Ditto.
 Capt. Whitshed, 3d Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Capt. Wynward, Ditto.
 Capt. Wilkinson, 8th Regt. of Foot.
 Hon. Capt. West, 58th Regt.
 Capt. James Webb.
 Capt. White, 34th Regt.
 Capt. Wheatland, 2d troop of Horse guards.
 Capt. John Walker.
 Lieut. Warrender, Royal Regt. of Horse-guards.
 Lieut. Waller, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Lieut. Wade, Ditto.
 Lieut. Warren, 8th Regt. of Foot.
 Lieut. Webb, 33d.
 Cornet Wogan, 3d Regt. of Dragoon-guards.
 Adjutant Webster, 6th Regt. of Dragoons.
 Cornet Walpole, Ditto.
 Ensign Wollaston, 1st Regt. of Foot-guards.
 Ensign Walker, Ditto.
 Ensign Warburton.
 Ensign Wyatt, 8th Regt. of Foot.
 Wm. Windham, Esq;
 Richd. Whitworth Esq;
 Mr. Walker, <i>Crow - nest, Halifax.</i>
 Mr. Winn, Ditto.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Y.</p> <p>Hon. Col. York.</p> |
|--|---|

THE



THE
CONTENTS.

Regulations for the Horse.

PART I.

CHAP I. <i>Of the strength of a regiment of Horse.</i>	Page 1
CHAP II. <i>The manner of forming and sizing a regiment of Horse, and of posting the Officers, and non-commissioned Officers.</i>	3
CHAP III. <i>In what order a regiment of horse is to march off its ground at a review</i>	9
CHAP IV. <i>Of marching and wheeling by divisions, or squadrons.</i>	13
CHAP V. <i>Of passing in review.</i>	15

PART II.

<i>The exercise on Horseback.</i>	20
-----------------------------------	----

PART III.

CHAP. I. <i>Of performing the exercise on foot.</i>	32
CHAP. II. <i>Of the manual exercise of the Horse.</i>	41

PART IV.

CHAP. I. <i>Regiments of horse at a review, or at the opening of a campaign, to be always complete.</i>	49
b	CHAP. II.

The CONTENTS.

- CHAP. II. *The form of lodging the kettle drums, and standards.* - - - 52
- CHAP. III. *Containing directions for teaching the exercise on horseback, and on foot, in the most easy and expeditious method, & bringing a regiment into order, without any unnecessary fatigue.* - - - 55

Regulations for the Dragoons.

PART I.

- CHAP. I. *Of the strength of a regiment of Dragoons.* - - - 61

PART III.

- CHAP. I. *How the Officers are to take their posts in the rear of the regiment, when the manual exercise is to be performed.* - 64
- CHAP. II. *General observations concerning the manual exercise.* - - - 67
- CHAP. III. *The manual exercise of the Dragoons, with an explanation.* 71
- CHAP. IV. *How the Officers are to take their posts again, in the front of the regiment.* 84

PART IV.

- CHAP. I. *General observations concerning the firings of the Dragoons.* - - - 86
- CHAP. II. *The manner of forming a regiment of Dragoons for firing.* - - - 93
- CHAP. III. *The manner of performing the firings standing, advancing, and retreating.* - - - 95

CHAP. IV

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. IV. <i>Of Parapet firing.</i>	-	101
CHAP. V. <i>Of passing in review.</i>	-	104
CHAP. VI. <i>How the Officers are to give the word of command through the firings</i>	-	107

PART V.

CHAP. I. <i>Regiments of Dragoons at a review, or at the opening of a campaign, to be always complete.</i>	- - -	112
--	-------	-----

Regulations for the Hussars.

PART I.

CHAP. I. <i>Of the strength of a regiment of Hussars.</i>	- - -	115
CHAP. II. <i>The manner of performing, and sizing a regiment of Hussars in squadrons.</i>		117
CHAP. III. <i>Concerning the review of a regiment of Hussars, and their exercise on horseback.</i>	- - -	121
CHAP. IV. <i>The exercise on foot at a review</i>		131
CHAP. V. <i>Manner of performing the firings.</i>		132
CHAP. VI. <i>Of passing in review</i>	-	136
CHAP. VII. <i>Of the particular duties on which Hussars are to be employed.</i>	- - -	138
CHAP. VIII. <i>Of marching and wheeling.</i>		139
CHAP. IX. <i>Of Action.</i>		141

The CONTENTS.

Regulations for the Cavalry in general.

PART V.

Of Field-Duty.

CHAP. I.	<i>Of the decampment and march of an army.</i>	144.
CHAP. II.	<i>Of an army's march into a new encampment.</i>	153
CHAP. III.	<i>Of the encampment of an army.</i>	158
CHAP. IV.	<i>Of standard and rear-guards.</i>	163
CHAP. V.	<i>Of posting and relieving sentries.</i>	169
CHAP. VI.	<i>What compliments are due from guards to General and Field Officers.</i>	175
CHAP. VII.	<i>Of General-Officer's guards, and orderly duties.</i>	179
CHAP. VIII.	<i>Method of giving out the Parole.</i>	182
CHAP. IX.	<i>Of the Picquet guard, together with some directions, to be observed after the retreat.</i>	185
CHAP. X.	<i>Duty of the Generals of the day, and of Brigade-Generals, and the method of giving in the returns.</i>	188
CHAP. XI.	<i>Of the performance of divine service in the army.</i>	192
CHAP. XII.	<i>General directions to be observed, when the line turns out.</i>	194
CHAP. XIII.	<i>Of exercising the troops.</i>	195
CHAP. XIV.	<i>How Officers, and soldiers are to apply for leave of absence.</i>	196
CHAP. XV.	<i>Of foraging parties.</i>	198
CHAP. XVI.	<i>Of grand-guards, out-posts, and parties.</i>	201
	CHAP.	

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XVII. <i>Directions for the conduct of Officers on grand-guards, out-posts, and parties, in case of an attack.</i>	207
CHAP. XVIII. <i>The manner of cantoning a regiment on a march, and of posting the necessary guards for its security.</i>	214
CHAP. XIX. <i>Orders relating to action.</i>	219
CHAP. XX. <i>Directions for the care, and preservation of the horses, in time of war.</i>	223
CHAP. XXI. <i>Instructions concerning the baggage on a march.</i>	225
CHAP. XXII. <i>Of Field-Equipages.</i>	227
CHAP. XXIII. <i>Directions to General Officers, for the keeping of their tables in camp.</i>	229
CHAP. XXIV. <i>Containing instructions for the management of the baggage in general, as well on a march, as on all other occasions.</i>	230
CHAP. XXV. <i>Of Sutlers.</i>	236
CHAP. XXVI. <i>The number of servants allowed by the King in time of war.</i>	237
CHAP. XXVII. <i>Of camp-utensils.</i>	238
CHAP. XXVIII. <i>Consisting of directions for the care of the sick, and the preservation of the soldiery in general.</i>	239
CHAP. XXIX. <i>Concerning the march of an army.</i>	242
CHAP. XXX. <i>Further observations, & instructions, concerning foraging-parties.</i>	243
CHAP. XXXI. <i>Further directions to be observed by the grand-guard.</i>	244
CHAP. XXXII. <i>Of Convoys.</i>	246
CHAP. XXXIII. <i>Of Patroles.</i>	250
CHAP. XXXIV. <i>Of Ambuscades.</i>	252
CHAP. XXXV. <i>Of out-parties.</i>	254
CHAP.	CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XXXVI. <i>Of night marches.</i>	256
CHAP. XXXVII. <i>Of making a retreat.</i>	258
CHAP. XXXVIII. <i>Of passing a bridge, or short defile, in the presence of an enemy.</i>	259
CHAP. XXXIX. <i>Of passing cause ways, or large defiles, where there is any danger of being obstructed by an Enemy.</i>	ditto

PART VI.

Of Garrison-Duty.

CHAP. I. <i>Of divine worship in Garrison.</i>	261
CHAP. II. <i>General rules for the conduct of Commandants in garrisons.</i>	263
CHAP. III. <i>Of the authority of Governors, and Commandants.</i>	264
CHAP. IV. <i>The usual guards in garrisons, and their manner of mounting.</i>	267
CHAP. V. <i>Of the dismounting of guards.</i>	274
CHAP. VI. <i>Of relieving sentries, with direc- tions how they are to behave on their posts.</i>	277
CHAP. VII. <i>Instructions to officers on guard.</i>	284
CHAP. VIII. <i>Of giving out the Parole.</i>	288
CHAP. IX. <i>Of opening and shutting the gates.</i>	290
CHAP. X. <i>Of rounds and patrols.</i>	292
CHAP. XI. <i>Directions to be observed in a Garrison, in case of fire.</i>	300
CHAP. XII. <i>Of military honours.</i>	303
CHAP. XIII. <i>Of punishments and executions.</i>	307
CHAP. XIV. <i>Of the burial of Officers, non- commissioned Officers, & private men.</i>	313
CHAP. XV. <i>Regiments to be always in readi- ness to take the field at 12 days notice.</i>	317

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XVI.	<i>The ceremony of nailing on, and swearing to the new standards.</i>	318
CHAP. XVII.	<i>Of the choice of Surgeons, the care of the sick in garrison, and the preservation of the Soldiery in general.</i>	321
CHAP. XVIII.	<i>Instructions concerning the care and management of the Horses.</i>	325

P A R T VII.

CHAP. I.	<i>Of the march of a troop, squadron, or regiment.</i>	332
CHAP. II.	<i>Of the march-routes of troops, squadrons, or regiments.</i>	334
CHAP. III.	<i>Of subsisting horse, or dragoons on a march.</i>	335
CHAP. IV.	<i>Of preventing irregularities in night-quarters, and on a march.</i>	338

P A R T VIII.

CHAP. I.	<i>Of Subordination</i>	341
CHAP. II.	<i>Of examinations, and Courts-martial.</i>	346
CHAP. III.	<i>Directions for preserving good discipline amongst the Soldiers.</i>	350
CHAP. IV.	<i>How the vacancies of Officers are to be supplied.</i>	355
CHAP. V.	<i>Of Recruiting.</i>	358
CHAP. VI.	<i>Of Desertion.</i>	363
CHAP. VII.	<i>Of Returns, and Reports.</i>	366
CHAP. VIII.	<i>Of Duelling.</i>	369
CHAP. IX.	<i>Of Discharges.</i>	372
CHAP. X.	<i>Of leave of absence, and Furloughs.</i>	373

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XI.	<i>Of the marriage of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Soldiers.</i>	376
CHAP. XII.	<i>Of reviewing troops, or squadrons.</i>	378
CHAP. XIII.	<i>Of the regulation of prices, weights and measures.</i>	379
CHAP. XIV.	<i>Of Ammunition.</i>	381

PART IX.

	<i>The monthly pay of a regiment of horse, dragoons, and Hussars.</i>	382
CHAP. I.	<i>Of small mounting.</i>	385
CHAP. II.	<i>Of paying the private Men.</i>	387
CHAP. III.	<i>Of the Arms.</i>	388
CHAP. IV.	<i>Of the Officers Clothing.</i>	391
CHAP. V.	<i>Of the clothing of non-commissioned Officers, Trumpeters, Hautboys, Drummers, and private-men.</i>	393
CHAP. VI.	<i>Of casting and recruiting Horses.</i>	401
CHAP. VII.	<i>Of preserving cleanliness and decency amongst Soldiers.</i>	403
CHAP. VII.	<i>Of preserving these regulations with care and secrecy.</i>	406
Conclusion.		407



REGU-

(1)

REGULATIONS
FOR THE
HORSE.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

EVERY Regiment is composed of five Squadrons, divided into ten Troops, and contains the following numbers of commissioned Officers, non-commissioned Officers, inferior Staff-Officers, and private Men.

A

Prin-

REGULATIONS

Principal Staff-Officers	{	1 General, or Colonel . . .	}	3
		1 Lieutenant-Colonel . . .	}	
		1 Major	}	
Inferior Staff-Officers	{	2 Adjutants	}	26
		1 Quarter-master		
		1 Chaplain		
		1 Solicitor		
		1 Surgeon		
		5 Mates		
		1 Riding-master		
		1 Trumpet-major		
		1 Kettle-drummer		
		10 Farriers		
		1 Sadler		
		1 Provost		
Commission'd Officers	{	9 Captains, including two Captain-Lieutenants . . .	}	29
		10 Lieutenants, including the 2 Adjutants, who rank as such		
		10 Cornets		
Non-comm'd Officers and Trumpeters	{	6 Non-commissioned Offi- cers pr. Troop . . . 60	}	70
		1 Trumpeter pr. Troop . . . 10		
Private	{	66 Men pr. Troop . . . 660	}	720
		6 Supernumeraries pr. Troop 60		

Effectives Total 848

The eldest Adjutant, the Trumpet-major, the Kettle-drummer, and all belonging to the inferior Staff, are appointed to the Colonel's Troop: the youngest Adjutant to the Major's Troop.

The

The six Supernumeraries to every Troop, being only designed to keep the Regiment complete, are never to march under arms, but when any of the men fall sick, in which case they must supply their places.

C H A P. II.

The manner of forming, and fixing a Regiment, and of posting the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers.

Article 1.

WHEN a Troop is to assemble at the Captain's quarters, and the horses are quartered separately about amongst the burghers, the men whose horses lie in the same stable, are to march thither together: but if the whole stand in one stable, the non-commissioned Officers are to march from thence in the front by twos, and the men to follow in the same order, till they arrive at the Captain's quarters, where the Quartermaster calls over the Roll; after which the Captain rides along the ranks, completes the files, tells off the Troop in four divisions, and posts the Officers and non-commissioned Officers.

N. B. Proper intervals must be always left for the non-commissioned Officers; and the Captains must take particular care that the ranks are very well dressed, and that the men cover exactly their File-

leaders, on which account they are required to know, in what manner to give the aid to their horses, in order to close occasionally either to the right or left.

Art. 2. As soon as the Colonel's Squadron is formed at his quarters, a Cornet and four non-commissioned Officers are to dismount, and fetch the Kettle-drums and Standards; the Standard-bearers must therefore assemble early at the headquarters, in order to be at hand in proper time upon this occasion: When the Kettle-drums and Standards are brought to the Troop, the commanding Officer gives the word to the men to draw their swords, and the Trumpets sound a *march*; all the Standards belonging to the Regiment march in the front of the first division of the Colonel's Troop.

* N. B. After the Troops are formed before their respective Captains' quarters, they march always to the Officer's quarters, who is to command the Squadron, there to form in Squadron.

In a Garrison, in which there is one, or more Squadrons, they must always march out to exercise, by Squadrons.

Art. 3. The Troops are to draw up according to the several ranks of their respective Captains, and every Squadron must be commanded by a Field Officer, if the number of Field-Officers in the Regiment be sufficient; if not, the eldest Captain takes the command of the fifth Squadron.

* As the Dragoon-Regiments are never divided into Troops, but always formed in Squadrons, this N. B. is therefore omitted in their *Regulations*.

N. B. The

† N. B. The eldest Troop in every Squadron takes post upon the right, and the youngest upon the left, excepting the Squadron upon the left flank of the Regiment, in which the eldest Troop takes post upon the left, and the youngest upon the right.

Art. 4. Squadrons always form three deep; the tallest men and horses are posted in the front rank, the next in size in the center, and the shortest in the rear; and, as it is his Majesty's pleasure that, for the future, the horses shall not be exchanged, but that every man shall keep that which he is accustomed to, and can manage, so he will not require the ranks to be very exactly sized, nor even mind although a small horse should happen to stand in the front rank, because the men are to take post on horseback, where they size on foot; the commanding Officers must therefore distribute the recruit-horses, where they will size as well as possible, taking care nevertheless to dispose of the best to those who take the most care of them.

Art. 5. Every Field-Officer, both at Reviews, and other publick occasions, is to remain with his own Squadron: On field-days the Commandant of the Regiment must be attentive to the behaviour of the whole, and the commanding Officers of Squadrons to that of their several Squadrons, and see that every thing is performed with the greatest exactness: The Officers, who lead Divisions, are, in like manner, to take care that they march in regular order, and are frequently

† This N. B. is also omitted in the *Dragoon-Regulations*, for the same reason as the preceding.

to call out to them to keep their files closed, and to preserve their proper distances ; they must be also careful that they cast their eyes constantly to the right, sit erect in their saddles, don't talk, or make the least noise, and that the rear-ranks always keep up, and cover well.

Art. 6. When a Regiment is formed in Squadrons, the distance of twelve paces, as a common interval, is to be always left between them ; but at a Review, his Majesty will determine that by order : The Officers commanding Squadrons must, above all things, be careful to form with great celerity, and, during the course of the whole Exercise, to preserve their given distances : On field-days, Regiments may allow themselves intervals of twenty paces, on account of performing the evolution of *dispersing*, but at a Review, they are always limited by a particular order from his Majesty.

N. B. The commanding Officers must take care, that their front-rank keeps boot-top to boot-top, and that the rear-ranks cover well their file-leaders.

Art. 7. The Officers posted in the front, are to keep close before the horses, excepting those who command Squadrons, who are to be a horse's length advanced before the center. The Officers are posted in the following manner :

The commanding Officer of the Squadron, together with the youngest Cornet, at the head of the first Division ;

The Captain at the head of the third, and the eldest Lieutenant in the rear ;

The

The second Lieutenant at the head of the second, and
The eldest Cornet at the head of the fourth. †

Art. 8. The twelve non-commissioned Officers belonging to every Squadron are posted as follows :

One non-commissioned Officer upon the right of the first Division, and he a Quarter-master.

One upon the right of the second.

One upon the right of the third, and he a Quarter-master.

One upon the right of the fourth.

One upon the left flank in the front-rank.

Two in the rear of the first Division.

One in the rear of the second.

One in the rear of the third.

Two in the rear of the fourth.

The twelfth non-commissioned Officer is the Standard-bearer.

N. B. The non-commissioned Officers in the rear of the Squadron, must take post opposite to the center of their respective Divisions, a horse's length from the rear rank, and dress to the right.

Art. 9. A Squadron marches in four Divisions, and every Division in eleven files : when a Squadron is drawn up on parade, the Standard-bearer

† In a Regiment of *Dragoons*, the commanding Officer, together with the Cornet, takes post at the head of the first Division ;

the eldest Lieutenant at the head of the third, and the second Lieutenant in the rear ;

the third Lieutenant at the head of the second, and the fourth Lieutenant at the head of the fourth.

8. REGULATIONS

is to be posted between the non-commissioned Officer, and the right-hand Man upon the right flank of the third Division. The interval between the ranks must be twelve feet, and large enough for two men abreast to ride through: In marching off, the Standard-bearer posts himself between the fifth and sixth man in the front-rank of the third Division, and the center and rear-rank close to the croop.

Art. 10. The * two Trumpeters belonging to every Squadron take post on the right of the non-commissioned Officer upon the right flank of their respective Squadrons, and the Kettle-drummer on the right of the Trumpeters belonging to the Colonel's Squadron, where they are constantly to remain on horseback, during the Exercise, and must take care to dress well with the front-rank.

N. B. The Trumpeters are to perform the wheelings by Divisions, and Squadrons, together with their respective Squadrons,

Art. 11. The three ranks of every Squadron must dress well to the right, and all the Squadrons in an exact line with the Colonel's Squadron.

Art. 12. The Men, when they are on horseback, are always to cast their eyes immoveably to the right over their right shoulders; are not to talk, but to keep a profound silence, and to sit

* In the *Dragoons*, the three Drummers in every Squadron, are to take post, and to perform the wheelings, in the manner directed for the trumpeters in the horse.

upon

upon their horses in an upright and graceful posture, of which the Officers are required to take particular care.

CHAP. III.

In what order a Regiment of Horse is to march off its ground at a Review.

Article 1.

WHEN his Majesty is to see a Regiment of Horse pass by Him in Review, or otherwise, at his arrival the Colonel gives the following word of command to his Squadron :

Draw your Swords! . . . 3 motions.

1. Seize the handle of the sword nimbly with your right hand over your left arm.

2. Draw the sword with a quick motion out of the scabbard, and hold it with an outstretched arm in a perpendicular line before you, and dressed along the rank, with the thumb of your right hand in a line with your mouth, and the flat of the blade towards you.

3. Bring the sword briskly down, placing the pommel of the hilt upon the right holster, and hold it dressed in a straight line along the rank, with the edge of the blade towards your body.

N. B. As soon as the Colonel gives the word to his Squadron, *Draw your swords!* the other commanding Officers of Squadrons are immediately to do the same,
upon

upon which the Kettle-drummer beats, and all the Trumpeters sound.

Art. 2. When the Regiment is to march off, the Colonel gives the word to the first Squadron :

Center and rear ranks, move forward to close order !

March !

The commanding Officers of the other Squadrons must be attentive to the Colonel, and every one take care to give the word of command at the same time.

N. B. The Major is not to march in the front of the first Squadron, behind the General or Colonel, but must remain at the head of his own.

Art. 3. The Squadrons march in the following successive order :

At the head of the Colonel's Squadron,
the Adjutant ;
the Kettle-drummer ;
* the three Trumpeters ;

the

* In the *Dragoons*, the Kettle-drummer is followed, in successive order, by
the Hautboys ;
the Drummers ;
the General, or Colonel, and behind him the Cornet ;
the first division, with one non-commissioned Officer, on the right flank, and two in the rear ;
the third Lieutenant at the head of the second, with one non-commissioned Officer on the right flank, and one in the rear ;
the first or Captain-Lieutenant at the head of the third, with one non-commissioned Officer on the flank, the Standard-

the General or Colonel, and behind him
 the youngest Cornet ;
 the first Division, with one Quarter-master on
 the right flank, and two non-commissioned
 Officers in the rear ;
 the second Lieutenant, at the head of
 the second Division, with one non-commissioned
 Officer on the right flank, and one in the rear ;
 the Captain, at the head of
 the third Division, with one Quarter-master on
 the right flank, the Standard-bearer in the
 center of the front-rank, and one non-com-
 missioned Officer in the rear ;
 the eldest Cornet, at the head of
 the fourth Division, with one non-commissioned
 Officer on the right flank, and two in the
 rear ;
 the eldest Lieutenant in the rear of all.

N. B. In marching by Divisions the leading Officers
 must keep close up after one another, and take care
 always to preserve their proper intervals, so as to be
 able, whenever the word of command is given, *To
 the left wheel by Divisions!* to form in Squadron
 without losing ground.

† While the Regiment is on horseback, the six Super-
 numeraries to every Troop, remain on foot in the

Standard-bearer in the center of the front-rank, and
 one non-commissioned Officer in the rear ;
 the fourth Lieutenant at the head of the fourth, with
 one non-commissioned Officer on the flank, and two
 in the rear ;
 the second Lieutenant in the rear of all.

† In the *Dragoons*, the twelve Supernumeraries to every
 Squadron, remain on foot in the rear, during the time
 the Regiment is on horseback, and don't make their ap-
 pearance till it passes in review by squadrons on foot.

rear,

rear, and are not to appear till the Regiment passes in Review by Troops on foot.

Art. 4. When there is a defile to pass, or the ground becomes so narrow, that the Squadrons can't march more than two abreast, great care must be taken that the men move close after one another, that as soon as they have passed it, they may instantly rank up, and recover their former order.

Art. 5. When a Regiment is marching either by Divisions, or whole Squadrons, the Squadrons must always keep close up after one another, and observe their distances, so as to be able, when the word of command, *To the left wheel by Divisions!* is given, to form the Regiment without losing any ground.

N. B. When a Regiment forms in the foregoing manner, the commanding Officers of Squadrons must take care that, as soon as they have wheeled, they close from the right and left flank to the center.

Art. 6. It is his Majesty's express command, that all evolutions and movements of the Cavalry shall be performed with the utmost celerity: In all wheelings, the flank which wheels, must come about in full gallop; and the commanding Officers of Squadrons or Divisions, when they are to wheel, must always give the word, *Halt! To the right (or left) wheel!* the word *Halt!* relates only to the flank which is to stand fast, and not to that which is to wheel: When the Squadron or Division is come about, the word is given, *Halt! Dress!* upon which it is once for all to be observed,

ferred, that they are to close from right and left to the center ; as soon as the commanding Officer sees that his men are dressed, he gives the word, *March!* and if, during this time, he has lost his proper distance, he must trot briskly on, till he has recovered it.

CHAP. IV.

Directions to be observed in marching and wheeling by Divisions or Squadrons.

Article 1.

THE Officers are always to march before the center of their Divisions, and frequently to look behind them, in order to prevent the men from growing careless, to keep them silent, and see that they march in a regular manner.

Art. 2. The men must keep a steady seat upon their horses, and have their stirrups so short, that when they raise themselves from the saddle, they may have their full fist between it and their body, the reason thereof being, that they may be able, when they stand up in their stirrups, to make a larger stroke : A Trooper on horseback is always to project his belly a little, and keep the rest of his body back ; to hold his bridle short, and in a straight line before him ; to cast his eyes constantly to the right, in order to preserve his rank dressed ; to keep his elbows close to his body, and not to
move

move his arms when his horse trots : In wheeling, the men are always to cast their eyes to the flank which wheels, and the Officers must take care to make them carry their swords firm in their hands, and to keep their files closed.

Art. 3. When the Squadrons are marching by Divisions, and have a gate or defile to pass, they are to rank off, to march close and quick through it, to rank up nimbly as soon as they have passed it, and afterwards to trot briskly on, and recover their distances.

Art. 4. When the Squadrons have marched by Divisions, and the word of command, *Form Squadrons!* is given, the first Division of every Squadron is to incline, upon a trot, so far to the right, that the second can march up in a direct line; but the third and fourth are to incline to the left, and march up in full gallop.

Art. 5. When the Regiment has marched by in Squadrons, and the word, *Form Divisions!* is given, the first and second Division are to gallop so far forwards as to allow room for the third to draw up in the rear of the second, and the fourth in the rear of the third; the first is, at the same time, to advance itself into the front of the second again; as soon as the Squadrons are reduced, and the Divisions have got their proper intervals, they are to fall into their ordinary pace.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.
Of passing in Review.

Article 1.

AFTER the Squadrons have marched up to their ground again, they are to form by Troops* in the following manner: The commanding

* As the *Dragoons* are always formed in Squadrons, it appears necessary to make the following repetition of a large part of this Article, in order to render their method of performing the evolution contained in it, clear to the reader.

The Officers, non-commissioned Officers, Kettle-drummer, Hautboys, and Drummers having posted themselves in marching order at the head of the first division of their respective squadrons, according to Article 2. in this Chapter; the Colonel, or Officer commanding his squadron, gives the word,

To the right wheel, and march off by fives!

upon which the front-rank wheels to the right by fives, or † half-quarter-ranks, excepting the first half-quarter-rank, which is to consist of six men, and marches directly forwards; and as, by its being told off in this manner, there must remain three odd men, so the two left-hand men of the center-rank are to move up to their right; then the next five upon the left of the center-rank are to follow, and so on that whole rank; and to the two odd men remaining in it, the four on the right of the rear-rank are to move up; after which the rest of that rank are to wheel to the right by fives, and follow the center-rank.—The other four Squa-

† They are properly quarter-ranks in the *Horse*; but here, half-quarter-ranks, because a rank of *Dragoons* thus formed in squadrons, consists of double the number of one of *Horse*, in troops.

drons

manding Officers of Squadrons give the word of command,

Form by Troops!

upon which the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and Trumpeters post themselves at the head of the first Division of their respective Troops: The Troops close briskly from the right and left to their center, every man taking care to cover his File-leader.

The marching off by fives is afterwards performed as follows: The Colonel, or Officer commanding his Troop, gives the word,

To the right wheel, and march off by fives!

upon which the front-rank wheels to the right by fives, excepting the first quarter-rank, which is to consist of six men, and marches directly forwards; and as, by its being told off in this manner, there must remain an odd man, so the four left-hand men of the center rank are to move up to his right; then the next five upon the left of the center rank are to follow, and so on that whole rank; and to the three odd men remaining in it, the two on the right of the rear-rank are to move up; after which, the rest of that rank are

drons are to wheel to the right by fives, when the Colonel's Squadron wheels, and to march to the ground on which it stood, where every Captain gives the word,

Halt! Front!

upon which the rear-ranks face to the front, but the front-rank keeps marching on; He then gives the word,

To the right wheel, and march off by fives!

upon which the Squadron wheels, and marches off in the manner above directed for the Colonel's.

to move up; after which, the rest of that rank are to wheel to the right by fives, and follow the center rank.— The other nine Troops are to wheel to the right by fives, when the Colonel's Troop wheels, and to march to the ground on which it stood, where every Captain gives the word of command,

Halt! Front!

upon which the rear-ranks face to the front, but the front-rank keeps marching on: He is then to give the word,

To the right wheel, and march off by fives!

upon which the Troop wheels, and marches off in the manner above directed for the Colonel's Troop.

N. B. Particular care must be taken, that the quarter-ranks keep exactly the distance of a horse's length from each other, that if, during the march, they should be ordered to form, the front-rank may be able to do it instantly: The flank-men must be also careful to cover well their leaders, and not to march at one time faster or slower than at another, which unequal movement would unavoidably produce openings or crowdings, but constantly to keep a steady, even pace.

As it is his Majesty's pleasure that the men shall take post on horseback where they size on foot, without paying regard to the sizing of the horses; so is it in like manner unnecessary, that those Troops which compose the left of every Squadron, should be exactly sized to the left, for which reason the Counter-march becomes altogether use-

B

less,

less, when the Regiment is to form by Troops, and march off by fives, because every Troop is to pass in review before his Majesty on horseback, in the order in which they draw up in the Squadron on foot.

Art. 2. The Troops † march in the following order:

1. The Kettle-drummer,
2. The Trumpeter,
3. The Colonel,
4. The Officers in a single rank, excepting the Captain, who is to be half a horse's length advanced,
5. The non-commissioned Officers in a single rank, with the Standard-bearer in the center, to such Troops as have Standards;
6. The Troop in the order already described.

† N. B. The Colonel's Troop marches with two Trumpeters, the Trumpet-major being posted to it.

† In the *Dragoons*, the Squadrons march in the following order,

1. The Kettle-drummer,
2. The Hautboys,
3. The Drummers,
4. The Colonel, &c. as in the *Horse*.

† This N. B. omitted in the *Dragoon-Regulations*; and as the term, *Troop*, occurs frequently in this Chapter, it must, in general, be understood to mean, *Squadron*, as it relates to the *Dragoons*.

In

In time of peace the Farriers shall have no horses, and at a Review are to march by on foot in the rear of the Supernumeraries.

Art. 3. After the Troops have marched by in this order, and have taken up their former ground, they must form in Squadron again, at which time the Officers and non-commissioned Officers are to move into their former posts.



PART II.
THE
EXERCISE
on Horseback.

Article 1.

THE front- and center-rank of all Squadrons, when they are to pass in Review, are to sling their Carbines, and to loosen their sword-knots; and when they draw their swords upon the place of Exercise, or elsewhere, must fasten them about their wrists; on field-days, the Carbines may remain in the buckets, till they are to be used.

Art. 2. The commanding Officer of the Regiment shall always exercise it himself, and it is his Majesty's positive order, that the Exercise shall not be performed by beat of drum.

When

When the commanding Officer has taken his post opposite to the center of the Regiment, he gives the word,

Take care!

at which † the Officers who command Squadrons, together with one Lieutenant and one Cornet, post themselves upon the right flank of their respective Squadrons; the Captain together with the other Lieutenant and Cornet upon the left flank, dividing themselves, so that every one may cover a rank; after which the commanding Officer gives the word,

1. *To the right-about wheel by fours!*

The wheeling must be performed as quick as possible, after which,

2. *As you were!*

upon which the Squadrons come to the right-about as they were by fours.

N. B. The practice of this evolution is kept up, that the men may know how they are to march into an Encampment.

The commanding Officer then gives the word,

3. *Third and fourth Division, to the right double your files!*

† In the *Dragoon-Regulations*, at the preceding word of command, *Take care!* the Officers who command Squadrons, together with two Lieutenants, take post upon the right flank of their respective Squadrons; two Lieutenants, and the Cornet also take post upon the left flank, dividing themselves, so as every one to cover a rank.

at which the two Divisions rein back to the center of the interval between the ranks of the first and second Division, and then passage to the right, till every man has covered his file-leader, forming by this movement six deep.

N. B. In the passage the men must cast their eyes to the right, keep their files closed, and double as quick as possible.

4. *As you were!*

at this word of command the two Divisions cast their eyes to the left, and passage to the left as quick as possible, till they come opposite to their former ground, then move up into it, and dress in a line again with the first and second Division.

5. *First and second Division, to the left double your files!*

this is performed as is described in Explanation 4, the Divisions taking great care to keep their files closed, and to double quick.

6. *As you were!*

this is performed according to Explanation 3.

N. B. The Standard-bearers close always to the Divisions which stand fast.

7. *Center- and Rear-ranks, move forward to close order!*

8. *March!*

at this word of command, the Commanders of Squadrons with three Officers take post before the center; the other two Officers post themselves, one upon the right, and the other upon the left flank

flank in the front-rank; the Standard-bearer reins back into the center of the center-rank, to cover the Serjeant on the right of the third Division.

After the rear-ranks have closed, and the Officers taken post as above, the commanding Officer orders the whole to march forwards; every Commander of a Squadron then gives the word,

1. Whole Squadron, march!

upon which the Squadrons march off their ground on an easy trot; at the distance of about fifteen paces, they are to fall into a strong trot; afterwards into a gallop, taking care to keep in close order, and continuing that pace as far as from ninety to hundred and twenty paces, where they attack the Enemy.

N. B. The non-commissioned Officer on the right flank, must look well to the four Officers in the front of the Standard, so as not to advance too fast, and every Squadron cast their eyes to the right,

When one, or more entire Regiments are marching together on a trot, the Officers before the Standards must also take care that their respective Squadrons are never further advanced in front, than those upon their right.

2. Halt! Dress!

upon which the whole halt at once, lift themselves off the saddle, and, raising their swords high above their heads, make a stroke, sinking down again at the same time to their seat.

3. March!

at this word of command, the whole Squadron disperses to the front in full gallop, excepting the

the commanding Officer, who, together with the Standard-bearer and † Trumpeter, stands fast upon the right of the ground from which the Squadron dispersed, and after a few minutes orders the Trumpeter to sound the *call*, upon which the men rally instantly, and draw up in their respective ranks to the left of their Standard, but are not to regard either their proper Divisions, or right-hand men, that they may be able to form the sooner: the Standard-bearer then marches into the center-rank again, and the Officers take their former posts, after which the commanding Officers of Squadrons give the word,

4. *Whole Squadron, march!*

the Squadrons march forwards, as in Explanation 1, from sixty to eighty paces, till the following word of command is given,

5. *Halt! Dress!*

upon which they halt, and perform the same which is above directed in Explanation 2: after they have made their stroke, three files from the right and left of every Squadron, are to gallop into the front, and disperse; to fire off their pistols; after that to retreat, and fall into their ranks upon the right and left flanks again: The Squadrons, during the time the flank-files are dispersed in the front, are to march after them with an even pace, keeping their ranks and files well closed; and when they have joined their Squadrons again, the word

† — Drummer, (in the *Dragoons*) who, after a few minutes, is ordered by the commanding Officer of the Squadron to beat *to-arms* upon which the men rally instantly, &c.

Halt!

Halt! is given, after which the front-rank dropping their swords, advance their Carbines (without word of command) make ready, present and fire, making it a running fire, to do which properly, the commanding Officer must give a signal to the flank-man, when to fire; and every man after him, is to take it from the right, and as soon as he has fired, drop his Carbine.

N. B. This is performed standing; the center- and rear-rank have their swords drawn, and the four men in the rear of the Officers in the center are not to fire.

6. March!

upon which the Squadrons trot forwards again, the front-rank, with their swords hanging over their wrists, draw their right pistols, (without word of command) make ready, present with an outstretched arm, and wait for the fire from the flank-man, as before in the Carbine-firing: Afterwards, they draw their left pistols, performing the same as before with the right; after they have discharged their pistols, they recover their swords, and trot forwards from thirty to fifty paces, till the following word of command is given.

N. B. All this is to be performed on a trot, nevertheless the ranks and files must keep closed and dressed in a straight line.

7. Halt! Dress!

upon which the directions given in Explanation 2 are to be observed.

8. Rank

8. *Rank and file!*

the Men take their posts in their proper Divisions and Files, and the Officers and Standard-bearers march also to theirs.

After the attack is thus over, and the Squadrons are formed according to the foregoing Explanation, the Colonel, or commanding Officer of the Regiment gives the word,

8. *Return your Swords!*10. *Dismount!*

the rear-rank rein briskly back to former distance, and the whole return their Carbines, dismount as quick as possible, link their horses without waiting perceptibly for one another, unstrap their Carbines, and, shouldering them, march into the front together.

The horses are not to be linked as formerly from both flanks to the center, but every man ties the reins of his bridle to those of his right-hand man by a running knot, about a span's length from the bit.

† When the Men are dismounted, the horses linked, and the Carbines shouldered, the first and second Squadron are to incline to the left, the fourth and fifth to the right from their horses, and march (without word of command) with a brisk pace towards the center of the Regiment, where they are to join the third; the first and second Division from the third Squadron march out,

† In the *Regulations* for the Dragoons, the remainder of this Article is omitted in this place, and as much of it as relates to them hereafter inserted, in the first Article of Part III.

from

from the right flank, the third and fourth from the left, and form as quick as possible in the front of their own horses; and the whole Regiment must close so as to leave no intervals between the Squadrons: Double distance is to be left between the files, and the Squadrons told off in two Divisions: The non-commissioned Officers who took post upon the flanks of Troops, fall into the Divisions, and the supernumerary ones into the rear of those Divisions to which they had been appointed on horseback.

N. B. When the Squadrons dismount, their horses must be taken care of by Burghers, or Countrymen.

Art. 3. His Majesty strictly charges all Officers commanding Regiments of Horse, to employ themselves totally in the training up, and forming of their men, who are required to be as expert and agile on horseback as the Hussars, to be complete masters of their horses, and able to manage their swords with great dexterity: they must likewise be taught to understand, that the firings which are performed at Exercise, are not to be made use of in service, till after they have cut off the first and second line of their Enemy sword in hand, in order to add still more by that reserve to their confusion and disorder: They are also to be informed, that the reason why they practise the evolution of *dispersing* at their exercises, is, because that it is almost impossible for a Squadron, which charges the Enemy, to force its way through them so effectually in an entire body, but that some part of it will be always broken; whenever therefore that shall happen, and the
Trum-

Trumpeter sounds the *call*, they will be more ready from the force of custom to join their Standard, and recover their order.

N. B. Every commanding Officer of a Squadron, as soon as he has made his attack, must, if necessary, order his Trumpeter to sound the *call*, in order to collect his Squadron, and put himself in a condition to fall upon the second line of the Enemy, or otherwise to act, as opportunity may offer, and circumstances require.

Art. 4. His Majesty does not doubt, but that every Officer who commands a Squadron, as his honour, reputation and life are dependant thereupon, has it in the best order; and, what is moreover essentially necessary, can rely upon his men; that he likewise does every thing becoming an ambitious and brave Officer, to keep his inferior Officers, as well as the non commissioned Officers and Private Men, to their duty; and takes care, that subordination be strictly complied with; that no man presumes to open his mouth, while the commanding Officer is speaking; and, in general, that every thing pertaining to his Squadron, is preserved in such condition, that the commanding Officer may rest assured, that an entire submission and obedience will be paid to him, as well in the face of an Enemy, as at the place of Exercise: in short, that his men are constantly kept in as good order, as it is possible for the best Cavalry in the world to be.

A N
A P P E N D I X
T O T H E
E X E R C I S E on Horseback.

WHEN Regiments exercise on field-days, they must perform the wheelings by whole Squadrons; must also march off their ground to the left, and from three ranks form two, for which the following word of command is given:

From three ranks form two!

to perform this, the rear-rank must first be told off in four quarter ranks; at the foregoing word of command, the two quarter-ranks upon the right flank wheel to the right, and the two quarter-ranks upon the left flank to the left; after which the right quarter-rank of the right flank wheels to the left, and the left quarter-rank of the left flank, to the right; as soon as these two quarter-ranks have passed the flank-men of the center rank, the other two quarter-ranks wheel in the same manner, and all the four quarter-ranks closing up thus to the right and left flanks of the front and center-rank, consequently form
two

two deep: The whole is to be performed on a trot, and care taken that all the quarter-ranks take up their ground on the right and left of their proper ranks together.

N. B. If the interval between the ranks is not sufficient for the rear rank to wheel up, it must fall back a little.

Rear-rank, as you were!

upon which the two quarter-ranks upon the right wheel to the right-about, and the two upon the left, to the left about, and march to the line on which they before stood, where the two quarter-ranks from the right wheel to the right, and the two quarter-ranks from the left, to the left, and march towards each other till they come to their ground, where they wheel up to the right and left with an even front, and form the rear-rank; all which must be performed together, and on a trot.

Every commanding Officer is at liberty to practise any other useful Manœuvres, in order to improve his Regiment as much as possible; amongst others, when the Regiment is marching in full trot, he can make them, on that pace, wheel to the right and left-about a few times by whole Squadrons; in doing which, great care must be taken, that the ranks and files keep closed; that they wheel about with great exactness and celerity, and yet preserve their order: After every wheel, the Squadrons should trot forwards a little, before they wheel again.

The following Evolution may be also practised, for which the word of command is given,

Second

Second Troop, march!

upon which the second Troop, namely the third and fourth Division of a Squadron, marches twenty paces forwards, and at that distance wheels to the right-about to face directly the first Troop; after which the two Troops discharge first their pistols, at each other, and then their Carbines; when the first Troop fires their Carbines, the second, which is advanced in the front, having their swords already drawn, must in full trot march by the right of the first into the rear, there wheel to the right, move up to their former ground, and form in Squadron again.

N. B. The Officers, as well as the Men, must be well informed, that these firings on horseback are not practised, in order to be used against an Enemy, but only to teach the horses to stand fire.



PART III.

CHAP. I.

The manner of performing the Exercise on foot.

Article 1.

WHEN the Squadrons, with their Carbines shouldered, have closed from right and left to the Center-Squadron, the commanding Officer gives the following words of command,

1. *Take care!*
2. *Present your arms!*
3. *Level your Carbines!*
4. *Prime and load!*

N. B. Particular care must be taken, that the men are first taught, and afterwards, upon all occasions, accustomed to load quick.

5. *The Regiment is to charge two deep! Rear-rank double your ranks!*
6. *March!*
7. *Center-rank close to the front!*
8. *March!*

N. B. At

C

When



7. *March!*

N

N. B. At the word *March!* the Captains fall in upon the flanks of their Troops, and the supernumerary Officers into the rear of their Squadrons: The Field-Officers stand fast upon the flanks of their Squadrons: The Standard-bearers march into the center-rank, and cover the Officer who commands the third Division of their respective Squadrons: The commanding Officer remains on horseback, opposite to the center of the Regiment, and gives the word:

9. *Prepare to charge by half-squadrons standing; the right flank begins!*

N. B. At this word of command, the Officers who command half-squadrons step out two paces, and face to the left, excepting the Captain upon the left flank, who faces to the right.

10. *Charge!*

upon which the Captain upon the right of the General's Squadron begins the fire; and when he gives the word,

Present!

The Captain commanding the tenth Troop gives the word,

Make ready!

When the first Troop fires, the tenth presents and fires.

When the tenth Troop presents, the second makes ready.

When the tenth Troop fires, the second presents and fires.

When the second Troop presents, the ninth makes ready.

C

When

When the second Troop fires, the ninth presents and fires, and so on, continuing the fire from right and left to the center, till the whole have fired two rounds: The Officers commanding Troops taking great care that they fire in successive and regular order, and without any longer interval of time between each fire, than while they can give the two words of command, *Present! Fire!* nevertheless in such a manner as to avoid all confusion, and so that five Troops may always stand loaded, which can be done with more ease, in firing thus by ten Troops, than by eight Platoons, as performed by the Infantry.

N. B. The front-rank is not to come down.

Art. 2. After the firings by half-squadrons are finished, the commanding Officer gives the word,

11. *Prepare to charge by whole Squadrons standing, the right flank begins!*

upon which the Captains who command Squadrons, and the Officer who leads the fifth Squadron step out again two paces forwards.

12. *Charge!*

The Captain commanding the General's Squadron then gives the word,

Squadron!

Make ready!

Present!

Fire!

When the first Squadron presents, the Captain commanding the fifth gives the word, *Squadron!*

When

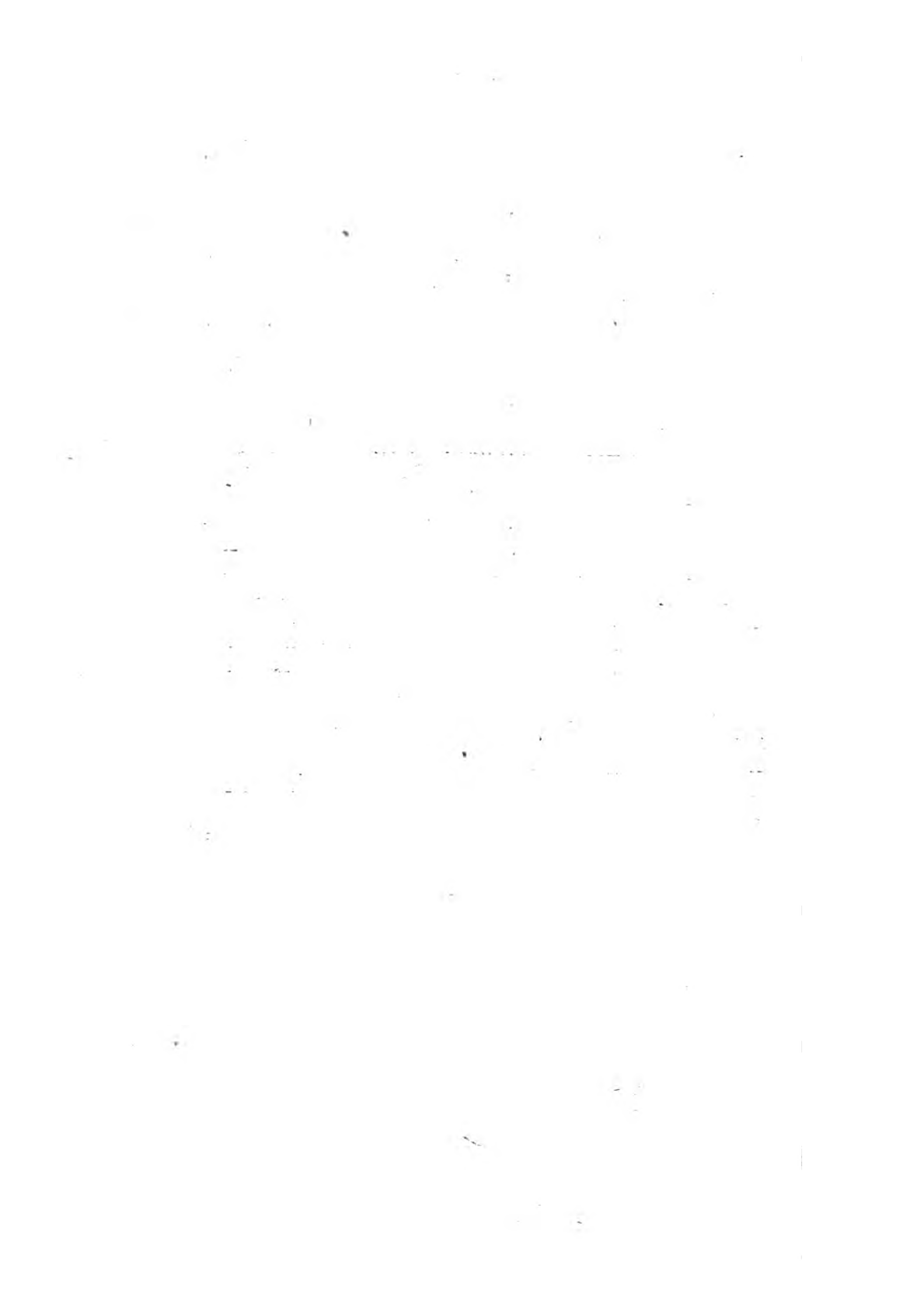
[To face p. 34.]

THE FIRINGS

B Y

WHOLE SQUADRONS, STANDING.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Squadron !				
Make ready!				
Present !				Squadron !
Fire !				Make ready!
	Squadron !			Present !
	Make ready!			Fire !
	Present !		Squadron !	
	Fire !		Make ready!	
		Squadron !	Present !	
		Make ready!	Fire !	
Squadron !		Present !		
Make ready!		Fire !		
Present !				Squadron !
Fire !				Make ready!
	Squadron !			Present !
	Make ready!			Fire !
	Present !		Squadron !	
	Fire !		Make ready!	
		Squadron !	Present !	
		Make ready!	Fire !	
		Present !		
		Fire !		



When the first Squadron fires, the fifth makes ready, presents and fires.

When the fifth Squadron presents, the Captain commanding the second gives the word, *Squadron!*

When the fifth Squadron fires, the second makes ready, presents and fires; and so on, the fourth and lastly the third Squadron.

When the third Squadron presents, the first begins again, and the firings are continued in the manner they were before by half-squadrons, excepting that, as there are now only five fires, the Officers are to take longer time between each word of command, so that three, or at least two Squadrons may always stand shouldered.

Art. 3. After the Regiment has fired two rounds by whole Squadrons, the commanding Officer gives the word,

13. *Prepare to perform the Parapet-firing!*

14. *Charge!*

N. B. At the thirteenth word of command, the Officers, who command in the Parapet-firing, fall into the ranks, and at the word, *Charge!* they spring two paces forwards, and make three files always advance and fire, in the manner it is performed by the Infantry, till they have fired two rounds.

Art. 4. After the parapet-firing is over, the commanding Officer gives the word,

15. *Center-rank open backwards to former distance!*

16. *March!*

N. B. At this word of command, the Officers and Standard-bearers step out into the front again.

17. *Rear-rank to the right-about!*
18. *March!*
19. *Halt!*
20. *Front!*
21. *Dress!*

When the whole stand dressed and steady, the commanding Officer gives the word,

22. *Take care!*
23. *To the right form by Troops!*
24. *March!*

upon which the Officers, non-commissioned Officers and Trumpeters post themselves in the front of the first Division of their respective Troops, and the Standard-bearers in the center of the non-commissioned Officers: The Troops must be always sized to the right, with the tallest men in the front-rank, the next in size in the center, and the shortest in the rear.

Art. 5. When the whole is in proper order, the commanding Officer gives the word,

25. *Halt!*
26. *Front!*

after which He marches to the head of his own Troop.

When his Majesty has reviewed the Troops, and they are to march off, the General or Colonel gives the word to his Troop:

1. *Take care!*
2. *Rest your Carbines!*
3. *Shoulder your Carbines!*

4. *Gen-*

4. *Center- and rear-rank close to the front!*
5. *March!*
6. *To the right wheel by Divisions!*
7. *March!*

The Officers commanding the other Troops, must be attentive to the General, or Colonel, and take care to give the word of command at the same time: The Trumpeters sound a *March*.

N. B. At the word of command, to wheel to the right by Divisions, the first Division of the General's Troop stands fast: The rear-ranks of the other Divisions close to the front in their wheeling, and are to perform it with as much exactness and regularity as the Infantry possibly can.

When a Division is to wheel in *marching*, the Officer gives the word, *Halt!* upon which the rear-ranks close up briskly to the front, and the front-rank keeps moving their feet only; He then gives the word, *Wheel!* upon which the three ranks wheel together, taking care to keep an even step, to march slow, and carry their arms well; as soon as the Division has wheeled, He gives the word, *Halt! Dress!* upon which all the three ranks stand fast at once, and dress themselves; the Officer then gives the word, *March!* and lifts up his left foot, the front-rank stepping off with the same, at the same time.

When the Officer, in wheeling to the right by Divisions, gives the word of command, *Halt! To the right wheel!* the three ranks must cast their eyes to the left; and after they have wheeled, and the word, *Halt!* is given, immediately to the right again.

Art. 6. The Regiment marches in the following order ; in the front of all
the inferior Staff-Officers ;
the Surgeons ;
the Kettle-drummer on horseback ;
the Trumpet-major, together with the Trumpeter belonging to the Troop ;
the General, or Colonel, and behind Him
the Captain ; behind the Captain
the Cornet ;
the non - commissioned Officers , with the Standard-bearer, in a single rank ;
the General's Troop, in four Divisions, all sized to the right ;
the six Supernumeraries, and behind them
the Farrier.

N. B. The first and fourth Division march off by sixes, and the second and third by fives : All the other Troops march in the rear of the General's ; and the Recruits are to have green branches stuck in their hats, to distinguish them.

Art. 7. The Officers, when they are on foot, are to hold their swords in both hands, close against their body, keeping the point in a line with their left shoulder, and stretching their right arm as low down as they can without constraint ; when on horseback, they are to carry their swords in the manner before described for the men.

N. B. The non-commissioned Officers are to carry their swords, on horseback and on foot, like the Officers.

Art. 8.

Art. 8. The Officers perform their salute at four motions :

1. Bring the sword with an outstretched arm just below the breast in a perpendicular line.
2. Drop the point with a very quick motion.
3. Bring back the sword to the position N^o. 1.
4. Bring the sword down upon the holster again, if on horseback ; if on foot, bring it to the position above described in Art. 7.

N. B. The Officers are not to begin saluting, till they come within three paces of the person they are to salute, counting four between each motion, excepting the second and third, between which they are to take double time.

The Standard-bearers on foot, are to perform the same motions with the Standards, and to salute, as the Colour-bearers do in the Infantry.

Art. 9. The Officers, when they are at their posts on foot in the front of their Squadron, or Regiment, must keep their eyes constantly cast to the right, their feet in a line, with the interval of a small pace only between them, their knees stiff, and their front even ; must stand quite steady, dress in a straight rank to the right, and divide equally their distances.

N. B. These directions are also to be observed by the non-commissioned Officers and private men.

Art. 10. When the Troops have passed by in Review, they are to march up to their former ground again in regular order, taking care nevertheless to leave greater intervals between the

Squadrons, so that every Squadron may come exactly opposite to their own horses.

Art. 11. Every Troop, as soon as it has taken up its ground, draws out and forms the Recruits, together with the Trumpeter, and such new non-commissioned Officers as have not yet passed in Review: Afterwards, when the last Troop has passed by, the General, or Colonel, posts himself at the head of the Recruits, and leads them on; behind him marches the Captain, followed by the new non commissioned Officers, the Trumpeter, and the Recruits in one Division, sized in their ranks, as they stand in the Troop.

N. B. The Recruits belonging to the last Troops, as soon as they have passed by in Review, are ordered, during their marching up to their ground, to fall out, and join those of the General's Troop, that the whole may follow in regular and successive order.

Art. 12. After the Recruits have been reviewed, the Captains march to their Troops, make them shoulder their Carbines, and the Recruits and non-commissioned Officers fall into their ranks again.

CHAP.

C H A P. II.

WHEN a Regiment exercises on foot on a field-day, the following part of the Manual-Exercise is to be performed.

1. *Rest your Carbines!* . . . 3 motions.

1. Seize the Carbine with the right hand under the cock, and turn the lock outwards.

2. Bring up the Carbine with a very quick motion from your shoulder with the right hand, and seize it with the left just above the lock, so that the little finger may rest upon the spring, and the thumb lie upon the stock opposite to your eyes.

3. Keep the right foot fast, and let the Carbine fall with a strong motion on the left arm, which must be raised a little from the body, that the Carbine may lie sloping over the elbow; the right arm must hang in a straight line down the body, and the right hand grasp the Carbine behind the cock; the left, with outstretched fingers, must lie close to the spring, so that the Carbine may rest between the thumb and the fore-finger.

2. *Shoulder your Carbines!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Bring up the Carbine to a perpendicular line before the left shoulder with your right hand, and seize it at the butt-end with your left, placing the thumb and two fore-fingers above the butt, and the two last fingers under it.

2. Bring

2. Bring the Carbine with a brisk motion upon your left shoulder, pressing the guard against the cuirass, at the same time throw back your right hand, and let it hang with outstretched fingers down the right side; the left arm must be a little bent, to raise the Carbine so high that the last loop may but just appear above the shoulder from behind.

3. *Order your Carbines!* . . . 6 motions.

1. Seize the Carbine under the cock with your right hand, turning the lock outwards.

2. Come to your poise, in the manner directed in the second motion of Explanation 1.

3. Rest the Carbine, as in the third motion of Explanation 1.

4. Bring the Carbine briskly to your right shoulder, with the right arm stretched out, and keeping your right hand with closed fingers under the cock, at the same time grasp the Carbine against the hollow of your right shoulder with your left.

5. Keep your left hand fast, and with your right seize the Carbine near the muzzle, with the thumb running along the barrel.

6. Plant the butt-end with a quick and strong motion upon the ground close by your right foot with your right hand, and at the same time throw back your left.

4. *Ground your Carbines!* . . . 4 motions.

1. Face to the right upon your heels, and at the same time turn the Carbine so that the cock may

may point to the rear, and the flat of the butt-end lie against the inside of your foot.

2. Step directly forward with your left foot, and lay the Carbine upon the ground, your left hand hanging down by your left foot, and your right foot kept fast with the butt-end against it.

3. Raise yourself up again nimbly, bringing back your left foot to its former position, and keep your body faced to the right.

4. Face again to the left upon your heels, and come to your proper front, letting your hands hang down without motion.

5. Take up your Carbines! . . . 4 motions.

1. Face to the right upon your heels.

2. Sink your body down, and come to the position described in grounding.

3. Raise up yourself and Carbine, and at the same time slip up your right hand as high as the muzzle.

4. Face to the left, and come to your proper front, holding your Carbine in the same position as is directed in Explanation 3.

6. Shoulder your Carbines! . . . 5 motions.

1. Slip your right hand as far down the barrel as you can without constraint.

2. Raise the Carbine high up in a perpendicular line from the ground with your right hand, and seize it with your left above the spring.

3. Bring the Carbine down to your *Rest*.

4. Bring the Carbine before your left shoulder to the position described in the first motion of Explanation 2.

5. Place

5. Place the Carbine on your shoulder in the manner directed in the second motion of Explanation 2.

7. *Secure your Carbines!* . . . 5 motions.

The three first motions bring you to your *Rest* as in Explanation 1.

4. Bring the Carbine opposite to your left side, turning the guard towards your body, with your right hand kept under the cock, and your left over the spring.

5. Bring down the Carbine with a brisk motion under your left arm, and, throwing back your right hand, let it hang down your right side; taking care to dress in the rank with the Carbine, and to hold the muzzle at an equal distance from the ground.

8. *Shoulder your Carbines!* . . . 4 motions.

1. Seize the Carbine with your right hand, in the manner before explained.

2. Come to your *Rest* at one motion, according to Explanation 1.

At the two remaining motions come to your shoulder, as is directed in Expl. 2.

9. *Your Carbines high in your right arms!*
5 motions.

The three first motions bring you to your *Rest*, as described in Expl. 1.

4. Shift your right hand under the cock in such a manner, that the four fingers may lie under the cock, and the thumb over the guard; at the same time slip up your left hand as high as the swivel

fwivel of your sling, and bring the Carbine with a strong motion against your right shoulder.

5. Throw back your left hand, letting it hang down by your sword, and hold the Carbine right up and down in your right hand.

10. *Shoulder your Carbines!* . . . 4 motions.

1. Clap your left hand strong upon the sling-fwivel against the hollow of your right shoulder.

2. Bring the Carbine at one motion on your left arm, placing your right hand with closed fingers behind the cock, and the little finger of your left against the spring, as in your *Rest*.

4 and 5. Come to your shoulder in the manner directed in Expl. 2.

11. *Club your Carbines!* . . . 6 motions.

1, 2 and 3. Rest your Carbine in the manner before directed.

4. Cast about the Carbine with a brisk motion, so that the butt-end may be upwards, the guard even with your eyes, and the lock outwards; the left hand remaining, as before, against the spring, only turned, but the right placed below it, with the thumb lying on the stock.

5. Keep your right hand in the same position, and raise the Carbine till the lock comes in a line with your hat, at the same time seize it with your left near the muzzle, letting your left arm hang as low down as you can reach without constraint, and keeping your right, with a squared elbow, a span's distance from your breast.

6. Bring down the Carbine with a quick motion on your shoulder, and throw back your right hand.

12. *Shoulder*

12. *Shoulder your Carbines!* . . . 5 motions.

1. Place your right hand in its former position on the Carbine, and raise it from your shoulder, holding it in a perpendicular line at a span's distance from you, and the lock even with your hat.

2. Sink the Carbine with your right hand till the guard comes opposite to your mouth, at the same time quitting your left, place it above your right, with the little finger resting against the spring.

3. Turn the Carbine at one motion, bringing down the butt-end, and come to your *Rest*.

4 and 5. These two motions are performed in the manner before explained.

13. *Face to the right!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Face to the right upon both heels, keeping the right foot fast before the left, after you have faced.

2. Raise your right foot, and set it down with a strong motion, by your left.

14. *As you were!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Face to the left again on both heels, keeping the right foot fast behind the left, after you have faced.

2. Lift up the right foot, and plant it strong by the left.

15. *Face to the left!* . . . 2 motions.

This is performed at two motions as in the foregoing Explanation.

16. *As*

16. *As you were!* . . . 2 motions.

These two motions are performed according to Explanation 13.

17. *Face to the right-about!* . 3 motions.

1. Step back with the right foot, placing the hollow of it in a straight line behind the left heel.

2. Face to the right-about on both heels.

3. Raise the right foot, and plant it with a strong motion by your left.

18. *To the left-about as you were!* 3 motions.

1. Step out a little with your right foot, placing the heel in a direct line before the hollow of your left.

2. Face to the left-about on both heels.

3. Raise your right foot, and plant it strong by your left again.

19. *Face to the left about!* . . . 3 motions.

These three motions are performed, as directed in the foregoing Explanation.

20. *To the right-about as you were!* 3 motions.

This is performed at three motions, according to Explanation 17.



IT is his Majesty's strict command, that the Cavalry shall perform every part of their foot-exercise with the utmost exactness, and above all things care must be taken, that they are taught to load quick; yet the Officers, as well as the non-commissioned Officers and private Soldiers, are at the same time to understand, that the firings, which they perform on foot, are never intended to be made use of in real service, otherwise than when they are in cantonments, or on out-posts, and happen to be attacked in such situations by a small body of the Enemy, that the Guard may be able to keep them off by their fire, till the whole have gained time to saddle, and to march out on horseback to disperse them.



PART

P A R T IV.

C H A P. I.

Regiments at a Review, and in the beginning of a Campaign to be always complete.

Article 1.

AT Reviews in time of Peace, and in the beginning of a Campaign in time of war, every Regiment, and consequently every Troop, shall be always complete under arms, in Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men, nor shall any Colonel suffer a deficiency in his Regiment of either man or horse on pain of being cashiered.

N. B. During the months of Exercise, Regiments are always to march out complete to the Rendezvous ; if any Troop therefore should have more than six men sick, it must borrow as many as are wanting from the Supernumeraries belonging to another ; and the Generals, or commanding Officers of Regiments, shall be answerable that their respective Troops and Regiments, when they exercise alone, are always complete under arms.

D

Art. 2.

Art. 2. At a Review, and in the beginning of a Campaign, every Troop must be composed of the following Numbers :

- 3 Commissioned Officers ;
- 6 Non-commissioned Officers ;
- 1 Trumpeter ;
- 66 Private Men ;
- 1 Farrier ;
- 74 Horses.

Thus every Regiment under arms will consequently have,

- 32 Commissioned Officers, including the two Adjutants, one of which is appointed to the General's Troop, and the other to the Major's ;
- 60 Non-commissioned Officers ;
- 10 Trumpeters ;
- 660 Private Men ;
- 10 Farriers ;
- 740 Horses.

N. B. The Trumpet-major and Kettle-drummer are also appointed to the General's Troop.

Art. 3. The Men are required to be in perfect health, and in the best order, nor must any Invalids, or such as become incapable of doing their duty, be suffered to continue in a Regiment, for which the Colonel shall be answerable ; neither shall

shall any be entertained under the age of 25 years, but such only as are grown to maturity, and of robust and vigorous constitutions.

The Horses are also to be constantly preserved in fit condition for service; and the Colonel shall be, in like manner, responsible, that he keeps none in the Regiment, which are any ways dis-temper'd.

Art. 4. The sick men, and such as are wounded, or otherwise incapable of performing their exercise, shall, provided they are able, march out without arms with the supernumeraries; but those who are too sick to go abroad, must be left behind in their quarters.

N. B. If a Regiment should happen to be sickly at the time of a Review, it is his Majesty's will, notwithstanding, that it shall be complete in men and horses, because in time of peace men can never be wanting to supply any such deficiency.

Art. 5. When one Troop has more sick men than another, and, although it marches out to the place of Exercise complete, nevertheless has not 66 who are able to perform their Exercise, because the sick must be excused; in that case, the Regiment must be completed from all the supernumeraries, and it is not very material, although a Troop should even have none, provided the Regiment is formed, and 60 men appear without arms in their stead: But as soon as the Regiment has marched by in review, and is formed again, every Troop must have its own men, both under

arms, and without arms, because the sick are then to fall into their respective Troops.

Art. 6. No new non-commissioned Officer shall be appointed in the room of any other who is sick, unless he should not recover before the Review.

CHAP. II.

The form of lodging the Kettle-drums, and Standards.

Article 1.

AFTER the Recruits have passed in review, the Colonel gives the word of command to the whole Regiment :

To the right-about !

and after the Regiment has faced about,

March !

upon which the whole step off together, and march with a brisk pace to their horses, the first and second Squadron inclining to the left, and the fourth and fifth to the right : When the third Squadron comes within about six paces off the front-rank of horses, the center- and rear-rank break, the first and second Division of which marches in by
the

the right flank of the Squadron, and the third and fourth by the left: When the whole have marched to their horses, they are to stand fast, facing towards them, till the Colonel gives the following word of command:

Mount!

at which the men unlink their horses as quick as possible, return their Carbines, mount nimbly without waiting perceptibly for one another, and dress their ranks; after which they are to put on their gloves: The Colonel then gives the word of command,

Draw your Swords!

after which a Cornet from every Squadron brings his Standard to the head of the General's Squadron, and then returns to his respective post again.

N. B. The Trumpeters belonging to every Squadron are to march with the Standards to the General's Squadron.

Art. 2. The form of march to be observed in lodging the Standards, is as follows:

1. The Kettle drummer.
2. The eleven Trumpeters in two ranks.
3. The Captain, and behind him one Cornet.
4. The Standard-bearers with the Standards in a single rank.

D 3

5. The

5. The General's Squadron told off in four Divisions, as usual.

When the Standards march by the King, they are to salute.

N. B. If the place of Exercise is not far distant from the Colonel's quarters, the Trumpets are to continue sounding till the Standards arrive there, after which the Captain orders the men to return their swords, and march to their stables: The other Squadrons, after the Standards are brought to the General's Squadron, return their swords, and march in regular order in the rear of the General's Squadron into quarters, when they are dismissed in order to put their horses into the stables, and take off the saddles, after which the proper Guard is to assemble at the commanding Officer's quarters.

A Sentry must be immediately posted over the Standards by the General's Squadron, till the Guard mounts.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Containing directions for teaching the Exercise on horseback, and on foot, in the most easy and expeditious method, and bringing a Regiment into order without any unnecessary fatigue.

Article 1.

IT is his Majesty's strict command, that all Regiments shall be kept in good order, not only during the time of Exercise, but throughout the whole year; and that they remain always quite complete, and in proper condition to march, whensoever they shall receive such orders.

Art. 2. The Field - Officers must oblige the Captains and Subalterns to attend their Troops diligently, and above all things to keep them under the strictest subordination, taking care that all orders are executed with the utmost punctuality; and likewise that the men make themselves masters of their horses, ride in an upright and graceful position, fix their stirrups according to the directions before given, and hold their bridles short.

N. B. Every man shall be at liberty to break his own horse, and to exercise him as he pleases.

Art. 3. Great care must be taken, as well on horseback as on foot, that the men don't talk, or make the least noise; and on horseback particularly, that they don't play with their bridles, or kick one another with their stirrups, but always keep a profound silence, and ride in a regular and soldier-like manner.

Art. 4. Men who have been long absent from their Troops, either on furloughs, or on account of sickness, must be again regularly instructed from the beginning in every part of their Exercise.

Art. 5. When a subaltern Officer neglects his duty, or the care of his Troop, his Captain must report him to the head-quarters, and the commanding Officer is to give him a severe reprimand; nevertheless the Captains, and commanding Officers are themselves to take all possible pains in keeping their respective Squadrons in proper order, and their Subalterns are only required to be assisting to them.

Art. 6. When Officers become incorrigible, they must be reported to his Majesty: When non-commissioned Officers likewise, who are Gentlemen, don't attend sufficiently to their duty, they shall forfeit all future pretensions to a commission; and all other non-commissioned Officers shall in like manner be kept with the utmost severity to an exact and diligent performance of their duty.

Art. 7. Officers and non-commissioned Officers must always be alert on their guards, must keep their
their

their men in good order, make them perform every thing in a regular manner at the reliefs, and instruct their sentries how they are to behave on their posts: When any Officer or non-commissioned Officer is negligent herein, he must be severely punished.

Art. 8. Recruits, after they are appointed to Troops, are in the first place to be exercised on foot, and taught how to march, to carry the head and body gracefully, to cast their eyes always to the right in marching straight forwards, but in wheeling, to the flank which wheels, in order to see that their ranks keep quite even and dressed: After they are perfected in marching on foot, they must be taught to ride, and particular care taken that they acquire a good seat, and hold their bridles in such a manner as to have the entire command of their horses; that they keep their arms close to their bodies, and sit firm in the saddle, so as not to gall the backs of their horses by too much motion: When the Recruits have rid for some time with stirrups, and are able to manage their horses at pleasure, either upon a trot or gallop, they must be brought to ride without saddle, in order to gain a still steadier seat, and to become as complete horsemen without it, as the best riding-master upon a demi-peak: When the Recruits are brought to this degree of skill, they must be taught to fire on horseback with their Carbines, in doing which it must be observed, that they are to present over the left ear of the horse, and to level rather too low than too high, lest their charge should be thrown away in the
air;

air; they must be likewise taught to fire after the same method with their pistols.

Art. 9. The Recruits are further to be instructed, in what manner to draw their swords, in what position to hold them, and how to return them; and must be taught to understand, as is before expressed in the beginning of these *Regulations*, that the principal advantage of the Cavalry consists in charging sword in hand; and also that when a man raises himself up in his saddle, and makes a full stroke from above, it falls with double the force of one, which is made sitting still: Moreover they must be instructed to hold their swords constantly in such a position, as to be able to strike with the edge, and never with the flat.

N. B. In order to bring the Recruits to a skilful use of their swords, the Officers must have past-board images made, and erected to represent an enemy, which they are at full speed to cut at; whereby it is once more to be observed, that they are always to raise themselves in their stirrups, when they make their stroke: Afterwards, when a Recruit is rendered perfect in this part of the Exercise, he must be taken into the ranks, and learn the evolutions, as above explained, from some of the old soldiers.

Art. 10. The men must be exercised in riding every day in the week, during both the summer and winter, unless when the ground is so slippery in the latter season, that riding would be dangerous.

Art. 11. During the time of exercising in the spring of the year, the exercise shall be performed five times on horseback every week, and once on foot:

foot: On Sunday-evenings likewise, and on the foot-exercise-day, the horses are to be rid out once.

Art. 12. It is his Majesty's principal intention, that the men should imbibe a strong affection for their horses, the Officers must therefore see, that they take great care of them, and are instructed in the knowledge of every thing, which may tend to their preservation: They must be also taught by the Regimental Saddler, how to stuff their saddles, and to fit them properly to their horses backs, that whensoever any alterations become necessary on a march, they may be able themselves to make them, and their horses not be exposed to any injury.

Art. 13. His Majesty strictly orders the commanding Officers of Regiments to take care, that their men are taught to saddle their horses quick: When a Regiment lies in a town, or in cantonments, and *to-arms* is sounded, the whole Regiment, without a single person wanting, must be assembled, and formed before the gate in the space of twenty minutes.

When a Regiment is encamped, and *to boot and saddle* is sounded, or orders are given to mount, the whole Regiment must be formed in Squadron on the parade in 12 minutes.

N. B. The horses are not, either at their Review, or on any other occasion, to have their manes platted, or their tails bound up.

Art. 14. Recruits must be always quartered with good veteran soldiers, in order to learn from them

them how to saddle their horses, to curry and rub them down, and every thing else relating to the care of them: The old men must also teach them to be œconomists, and contribute as much as possible to make them complete soldiers.

N. B. Recruits must be also taught how to link their horses when they dismount, which is to be done according to the directions above given; namely, every man links his horse with his reins to the reins of his right-hand man, without waiting one for another.

Art. 15. The Officers themselves must teach the Recruits their foot-exercise, taking particular care that they load quick and level well, that whensoever they shall happen to be attacked in cantonments, they may be able to make a good defence.



REGU-

REGULATIONS
FOR THE
DRAGOONS.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

A Regiment of Dragoons consisting of * five Squadrons, contains the following numbers of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men.

- * A Regiment of ten Squadrons contains double the number of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, Drummers, and private Men, which are specified in the following detail.

Princi.

REGULATIONS


		N ^o . of Persons.
Principal Staff-Officers.	1 General, or Colonel	3
	1 Lieutenant-Colonel	
	1 Major	
Inferior Staff-Officers.	2 Adjutants	24
	1 Quarter-master	
	1 Chaplain	
	1 Solicitor	
	1 Surgeon	
	5 Mates	
	1 Riding-master	
	1 Kettle-drummer	
	4 Hautboys	
	1 Saddler	
Commissioned Officers.	4 Captains, including two Captain-Lieutenants	29
	20 Lieutenants, including the two Adjutants, who rank as such	
	5 Cornets	
Non-commis- sioned Officers, and Drummers.	12 Non-commissioned Offi- cers pr. Squadron 60	75
	3 Drummers pr. Squa- dron 15	
	132 Dragoons pr. Squa- dron 660	720
	12 Supernumeraries pr. Squadron 60	
Effectives Total		851

The

The eldest Adjutant, the Kettle-drummer, the four Hautboys, and all belonging to the inferior Staff, are appointed to the Colonel's Squadron; the youngest Adjutant to the Major's Squadron.

The twelve Supernumeraries per Squadron, being only designed to keep the Regiment complete, are never to march under arms, but when any of the men fall sick, in which case they must supply their places.



 The remainder of this PART, and PART the second of the *Dragoon-Regulations*, being literally the same as PART the first and second of the *Horse*, exclusive of those few variations, which have been taken notice of in their proper places, I shall therefore, in order to avoid repetition, beg leave to refer the Reader to them, and proceed to PART the third.



PART III.

THE

Manual Exercise.

CHAP. I.

How the Officers are to take their Posts in the rear of the Regiment, when the Manual Exercise is to be performed.

Article 1.

AS soon as the Dragoons are dismounted, the horses linked, the bayonets fixed, and firelocks shouldered, the first and second Squadron are to incline to the left, the fourth and fifth to the right from their horses, and march (without word of command) with a brisk pace towards the center of the Regiment, where they are to join the third; the first and second Division of the third Squadron march out from the right flank, the third and fourth from the left, and form

form as quick as possible in the front of their own horses; and the whole Regiment must close in such manner as to leave no intervals between the Squadrons.

The Squadrons are to be told off in Platoons; and when they march from their horses, the non-commissioned Officers are to fall in; the Officers, and Standard-bearers are to remain in their respective Squadrons.

N. B. A Regiment of ten Squadrons, is to be formed in two battalions; the first in the front of the horses of the third Squadron; and the second, in the front of those of the eighth; in which situation they are to remain during the Manual Exercise, and the Firings.

Art. 2. When the Regiment is thus formed with shouldered arms, and fixed bayonets, in the front, the commanding Officer gives the following caution:

Take care to perform your Exercise!

upon which the Drummers belonging to the third Squadron run into the front, and post themselves behind the commanding Officer, opposite to the center: The other Drummers run to the right and left flank, where they draw up three deep, and dress with the Regiment.

Art. 3. As soon as the Drummers have posted themselves, the commanding Officer orders a short ruffle, at which the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, Standard-bearers, Hautboys, and Drummers, face to the right-about, and march,
E without

without further notice from the drum, into the rear of the Regiment.

The Major also rides into the rear, and posts himself on the right flank, in a line with the Officers.

The Officers, together with the Standard-bearers and Hautboys, in taking their posts of exercise in the rear, are to march after one another through the intervals where the non-commissioned Officers in the front-rank stood.

The Officers, and non-commissioned Officers are always to carry their swords firm in both hands, with the flats towards the front.

Art. 4. As soon as the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, Standard-bearers, and Hautboys have marched into the rear, and halted in straight ranks, the commanding Officer orders a second ruffle, at which they all come to the left-about to their proper front, and the Standard-bearers order the standards.

N. B. The non-commissioned Officers who form the fourth rank in the rear of the Regiment, must stand fast; and the Standard-bearers, Hautboys, and Drummers are to dress in a line: The Officers are to draw up eight feet in the rear of the non-commissioned Officers, and the Kettle-drummers to remain on horseback, on the right flank.

At the second ruffle, the flank-men step out twenty-four paces in the front: If the Regiment consists of ten Squadrons, one flank-man steps out from the right of the first Battalion, and one from the left of the second.

N. B. In

N. B. In a Regiment of ten Squadrons, formed as above in two Battalions, the Colonel gives the word of command to one, and the Lieutenant-Colonel to the other.

CHAP. II.

General Observations concerning the Manual Exercise.

Article 1.

IT is necessary in the first place, that every man, under arms, should assume a good air, hold his head and body unconstrained, keep his feet in a proper position, and draw in his belly.

Art. 2. In order to have the Exercise performed well, it is, in a particular manner, requisite, that the ranks and files should first be even; the Men are therefore to be taught to make it an inviolable rule, as soon as they handle their arms, always to dress themselves to the right, and to cover well their leaders.

Art. 3. If the Men have lines drawn, they are to toe them; but, without lines, they must cast their eyes to the right, and dress accordingly.

Art. 4. Great care must be taken, that the Men carry their arms well; for which reason, they must first be diligently taught, and in-

formed, that they are to keep them steady and even upon their shoulders; the upper part not too close to their head, nor the butt-end too far from their body, with three fingers placed above, and two under it; their arms almost stretched out, but unconstrained; the barrels outwards, and the guards pressed against their body, in a firm and steady position.

Art. 5. That the firelocks, when shouldered, may be exactly dressed in rank and file, the Men must keep their bodies upright, and in full front; and not have one shoulder too forward, or the other too backward.

Art. 6. The distances between the files must be equal, and not greater than from arm to arm, and that the Men have just room to perform the motions; for the future therefore, they are not allowed to be so large as before.

Art. 7. The first thing to be taken care of in the disciplining of Men, is, for the Officers to exercise, and dress them properly on foot, till they assume the air of a Soldier, and get rid of the clown.

Art. 8. In the performance of the Manual Exercise, the Men must wait well between the motions, and do them together, counting ten between every one.

Art. 9. Every motion must be performed as quick and immediate as possible after the flank-
men

men begin it, who are to make the motions nimbly, but very large.

Art. 10. The Men must do every motion with life, and come down with a strong flap upon their firelocks or pouches, in that part of the Exercise, where those motions are required; in planting their feet likewise, they are first to lift their legs well up always, and then set to them down hard and together.

Art. 11. The Men must be as quick as possible, in the performance of all facings; must keep their knees stiff, and plant their feet, whether forwards or backwards, briskly and short; must carry their arms also firm, and quite steady upon their shoulders.

Art. 12. The Men must keep their ranks and files exactly dressed, during the whole Exercise, and never move their left heels.

Art. 13. At every word of command, and in all the motions, the Men must dress with their arms in rank and file; must carry them at an equal height and distance from their bodies, and always hold them steady, and without motion; in the position of the *poise*, must place their left hand close to the feather-spring, and in a direct line with their eyes.

Art. 14. No Soldier shall move his head under arms, and during the Exercise; much less pre-

sume to look forwards, to the left, or backwards; but must cast his eyes constantly to the right.

Art. 15. A Soldier must perform his Exercise with a good grace; is not to tremble, grunt, bend his knees, lean either forwards or backwards, or hang down his head; but constantly to stand upright and steady, and to do all his motions with great spirit.

Art. 16. The men's legs must be a large hand's breadth distant from each other, in the performance of every motion, and word of command, excepting when they stand shouldered, in which position, their heels must be closed together, and their toes turned outwards.

Art. 17. The right hand must hang motionless down the right side of the body, and no man stir a finger.



CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The Manual Exercife, with an Ex-
planation.

THE commanding Officer gives the word of
command,

*Take care to perform the Manual Exercife, with-
out word of command!*

upon which the orderly Drummer beats a long
ruffle, and the Regiment performs the Manual
Exercife according to the following words of com-
mand, beginning immediately after the ruffle.

1. *Join your right hands to your Firelocks!*

1 motion.

Seize the Firelock with your right hand, and
turn the lock outward, keeping the Firelock in
the same situation as before.

2. *Poife your Firelocks!* . . . 1 motion.

Bring up the Firelock with a quick motion
from your shoulder, and feize it with the left
hand, juft above the lock, fo that the little finger
may reft upon the spring, and the thumb lie
upon the stock: The Firelock muft not be held
too far from your body, and your left hand muft
be of an equal height with your eyes.

E 4

3. *Cock*

3. *Cock your Firelocks!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Turn the barrel opposite to your face, and place your thumb upon the cock, your fore-finger before the tricker, and your other three fingers under the guard, raising your right elbow square at this motion.

2. Cock your Firelock, by drawing your elbow down at the same time, keeping your thumb upon the cock, and your fore-finger before the tricker.

4. *Present!* 1 motion.

Step briskly back with your right foot behind your left heel, and bring the butt-end, in presenting, even with your shoulder, sinking the muzzle a little, and levelling in a line to the right.

5. *Fire!* 1 motion.

Draw the tricker briskly back, then bring the Firelock down to the right side, holding it firm and steady against your body, and in a level above the waist-belt, and, at the same time, seize the cock with your right hand.

6. *Half-cock your Firelocks!* . . . 1 motion.

Half-bend the cock briskly, with a draw-back of your elbow.

7. *Handle your Cartridges!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Bring your hand, with a short round to your pouch, flapping it hard, and take hold of your Cartridge.

2. Bring

2. Bring the Cartridge, with a quick motion, a hand's breadth distance from your mouth with your right hand.

8. *Open your Cartridges!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Bring the Cartridge nimbly to your mouth, and bite the top well off.

2. Bring it back again to the same distance from your mouth, as before.

9. *Prime!* 2 motions.

1. Turn up your hand, with your thumb resting upon the pan, and shake in the powder.

2. Place the two last fingers of your right hand behind the pan, holding the Cartridge upright between the thumb, and the two fore-fingers.

10. *Shut your Pans!* 2 motions.

1. Shut the pan briskly, drawing your right arm, at this motion, towards your body, and holding the Cartridge fast in your hand, as in the former position.

2. Seize the Firelock, with a strong motion, behind the lock, with your two last fingers.

11. *Cast about to charge!* . . . 1 motion.

Step nimbly up with your right foot, setting it down strong, and before your left heel, and with your left hand bring about the Firelock to your left side, holding it by the third loop, and the muzzle in a line with your right shoulder; at the same time quit the Firelock with your right hand, holding the Cartridge in your full fist, a hand's

hand's breadth from the muzzle, and in a line with your mouth.

12. *Charge with Cartridges!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Turn up your hand, and putting the Cartridge into the muzzle, shake all the powder into the barrel.

2. Place your right hand closed, with a quick and strong motion, upon the rammer.

13. *Draw your Rammers!* . . . 1 motion.

Draw out the Rammer with as quick a motion as possible, place it above your waist-belt, and shorten it, holding it in a line with the barrel of your Firelock.

14. *Put them in the Barrels!* . . . 1 motion.

Push the Rammer down the barrel, then draw it entirely out again with an outstretched arm, and, placing it above your waist-belt, shorten it, keeping it in a line with the barrel.

15. *Return your Rammers!* . . . 1 motion.

Return the Rammer, pushing it down with as quick a motion as possible, immediately after which, bringing the Firelock up before your left shoulder, place your left hand upon the butt-end, and at the same time fall back with your right foot.

16. *Shoulder your Firelocks!* . . . 1 motion.

Bring your Firelock upon your shoulder, and throw back your right hand nimbly down your
right

right side, and carry your arms in the position, already largely described in the general Observations on the Manual Exercise.

17. *Order your Firelocks!* . . . 6 motions.

1. Seize the Firelock with your right hand, turning the lock outwards.

2. Raise the Firelock from your shoulder, and place your left hand with a quick motion above the lock; holding the piece right up and down in both hands before you, and your left hand even with your eyes.

3. Step briskly back with your right foot, placing it a hand's breadth distant from the heel of your left; at the same time, bring down the Firelock as quick as possible, to your *Rest*, sinking it as far down before your left knee, as your right hand will permit without constraint: Your left hand is kept fast in this motion, and your right, with closed fingers, held under the cock; taking care to draw in the muzzle well towards your body, and to dress in a line with the butt-end.

4. Draw the Firelock nimbly, with your left hand, against your right shoulder, so that it be of an equal height, keeping both hands in the same position, in the performance of this motion.

5. Quit the Firelock with your right hand, and, sinking it at the same time, with your left, seize it near the muzzle, which must be of an equal height with your eyes, and hold it close against your right side.

6. Lift

6. Lift up your right foot, and plant it firm, and at once, by your left; at the same time throw back your left hand behind your sword, and with your right, bring down the butt-end strong upon the ground, placing it even with the toe of your right foot; the thumb of your right hand lying along the barrel, and the muzzle kept at a little distance from your body.

18. *Ground your Firelocks!* . . . 4 motions.

1. Face to the right upon your heels, and, at the same time, turn the Firelock, so that the lock may point to the rear, and the flat of the butt-end lie against the inside of your foot.

2. Step directly forward with your left foot, about as far as the third loop of the Firelock, and lay it upon the ground, your left hand hanging down by your left foot, and your right foot kept fast, with the butt end against it.

3. Raise yourself up again nimbly, bringing back your left foot to its former position, and keep your body faced to the right.

4. Face again to the left upon your heels, and come to your proper front, letting your hands hang down without motion.

19. *Take up your Firelocks!* . . . 4 motions.

1. Face to the right upon your heels.

2. Sink your body down, and come to the position described in grounding.

3. Raise up yourself and Firelock, and at the same time slip up your right hand as high as the muzzle.

4. Face

4. Face to the left, and come to your proper front, holding the Firelock in the same position as is directed in Explanation 17.

20. *Shoulder your Firelocks!* . . . 5 motions.

1. Slip your right hand down the barrel, as far as the third loop.

2. Raise the Firelock high up in a perpendicular line from the ground with your right hand, and seize it with your left above the spring.

3. Step back with your right foot, placing it behind your left heel, and come down to your *Rest*.

4. Lift up your right foot, and plant it strong, bring the Firelock at the same time before your left shoulder, and seize the butt-end with your left hand, keeping it in the position above described.

5. Place the Firelock upon your shoulder, and throw your right hand briskly back.

21. *Present your arms!* . . . 3 motions.

This is performed at three motions, as is directed in Explanation 17.

22. *To the right-about!* . . . 3 motions.

1. Bring up the Firelock with a quick motion high before you, till your left hand comes even with your eyes, keeping both hands in the same position.

2. Face to the right-about, taking care in facing, to hold the Firelock right up and down, and steady in your hands.

3. Step

3. Step back with your right foot, and come down to your *present*.

23. *To the left-about, as you were!* 3 motions.

1. Bring up your right foot briskly to the hollow of your left, as is directed in the foregoing Explanation.

2. Face as quick as possible to the left about.

3. Come down to your *present*.

24. *Shoulder your Firelocks!* . . . 2 motions.

Shoulder your Firelock at two motions, in the manner before directed.

25. *Charge your Bayonets breast-high!*

3 motions.

1. Join your right hand to your Firelock.

2. Poise your Firelock.

3. Let the Firelock fall down upon your left arm, keeping your right hand behind the lock, and stepping back at the same time with your right foot; the butt and muzzle must be kept at an equal height, and well levelled.

26. *Shoulder your Firelocks!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Bring up the Firelock before you, placing your left hand at the same time under the butt-end, and planting your right foot strong by your left.

2. Place your Firelock upon your shoulder, and throw back your right hand.

27. *Secure*

27. *Secure your Firelocks!* . . . 5 motions.

The three first motions bring you to your *Rest*, as in Explanation 17.

4. Step up briskly with your right foot, turning the Rammer at the same time towards you, and hold the Firelock with both hands right up and down against your left shoulder; your left hand even with your eyes, and your thumb upon the stock.

5. Bring the butt-end with your right hand nimbly under your left arm, then throw it briskly back, keeping your left in the same position, and taking care to dress in the rank with your Firelock, and to hold the muzzle at an equal distance from the ground.

28. *Your Firelocks high in your right arms!*
5 motions.

1. Slap your right hand strong upon the Firelock, seizing it just before the left, and keeping it still secured.

2. Bring the Firelock with both hands straight before you, with the lock outwards, and seize it at once under the cock with your right.

3. Step back with your right foot, and come to your *Rest*.

4. Bring the Firelock to your right side, with a quick motion, with your left hand, and slip it up till it comes even with your shoulder, placing the four fingers of your right under the cock, and the thumb over the guard.

5. Step briskly up with your right foot, at the same time throwing back your left hand, and hold the Firelock right up and down in your right hand.

29. *Shoul-*

29. *Shoulder your Firelocks!* . . . 5 motions.

1. Clap your left hand strong upon the Firelock, against the hollow of your shoulder.

2. Cast off the Firelock, with a quick motion, with both hands from you, and slipping your left at the same time down to the spring, seize it under the cock with your right with closed fingers, observing the same position as described in the first motion of Explanation 22.

3. Come down to your *Rest*.

4 and 5. Come to your shoulder, as is directed in Explanation 20.

30. *Club your Firelocks!* . . . 13 motions.

1 and 2. These two motions are performed as in Explanation 1 and 2.

3. Step out strong and nimbly with your right foot, and plant it before the left, at the same time let go your right hand, bringing down the Firelock with your left, and seize it near the muzzle with your right, holding it with both hands close to your body, and the muzzle in a line with your shoulder, your left hand placed upon the third loop.

4. Slip the Bayonet up with your right hand, keeping your right arm close along the barrel at this motion.

5. Turn the Bayonet to the right, squaring your right elbow at this motion.

6. Slip the Bayonet briskly off the muzzle, and hold it a hand's breadth from it.

7. Enter the point of your Bayonet in the scabbard.

8. Thrust the Bayonet quite into the scabbard.

9. Seize:

9. Seize the Firelock briskly with your right hand near the muzzle.

10. Come to your Rest at once from your left side.

11. Keep the Firelock firm in your left hand, and cast it about with your right, bringing up your right foot at the same time, and seizing it with your right hand at the last loop, with the thumb opposite to your eyes.

12. Raise the Firelock with your right hand, and take hold of it with your left, with outstretched fingers, near the muzzle, keeping it somewhat distant from your body, and your left arm almost stretched out.

13. Bring the Firelock, with the butt upwards briskly down upon your shoulder, and throw back your right hand; the lock must be outwards, the left arm almost stretched out, the muzzle drawn in well towards the body, and the Firelock steady and even upon your shoulder.

31. *Shoulder your Firelocks!* . 10 motions.

1. Clap your right hand strong upon the Firelock at the last loop, and raise it nimbly from your shoulder.

2. Sink the Firelock with your right hand, and, seizing it with your left, at the spring, hold it in the position above directed.

3. Let go your right hand, and turn the Firelock with a quick motion, with your left, bringing down the butt-end; and come to your Rest, by placing your right hand under the cock with closed fingers, and stepping back at the same time with your right foot.

F

4. Bring

4. Bring the Firelock to your left side with your right hand, stepping out briskly with your right foot, and placing it before the left, seize the Firelock near the muzzle with your right hand, and hold it against your left side, in the manner before directed.

5. Take hold of the Bayonet with your right hand, taking care at this motion not to bow your head, or sink the muzzle, and to hold the Firelock firm against your body in the left hand.

6. Draw your Bayonet briskly out of the scabbard, and bring it up within a hand's breadth of the muzzle, holding it right up and down, the thumb placed upon the shank, and the little finger upon the notch.

7. Thrust the Bayonet down upon the muzzle, as far as the notch will permit, keeping your right elbow square.

8. Turn the Bayonet briskly to the left, and fix it, bringing your elbow at this motion towards the barrel, and, slipping down your right hand, take hold of the Firelock near the muzzle.

9. Bring up the Firelock briskly before your left shoulder, so high as to be able to place your left hand under the butt-end, and at the same time step back with your right foot, placing it in its former position by the left.

10. Place the Firelock upon your shoulder, in the manner before directed.

32. *Face to the right!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Face to the right upon both heels.

2. Raise your right foot, and set it down strong by your left.

33. *As you were!* . . . 2 motions.

1. Face to the left again upon your heels.
2. Lift up your right foot, and plant it strong by your left.

34. *Face to the left!* . . . 2 motions.

This is performed at two motions, as in the foregoing Explanation.

35. *As you were!* . . . 2 motions.

These two motions are performed, as is directed in Explanation 32.

36. *Face to the right-about!* . . . 3 motions.

1. Place your right foot nimbly behind your left heel.
2. Face to the right-about.
3. Lift up your right foot, and set it down again, with a strong motion, by your left.

37. *To the left-about, as you were!* 3 motions.

1. Place your right foot nimbly against the hollow of your left.
2. Face to the left-about.
3. Step out again strong with your right foot.

38. *Face to the left-about!* . . . 3 motions.

These three motions are performed, as in the foregoing Explanation.

39. *To the right-about, as you were!* 3 motions.

This is performed at three motions, as is directed in Explanation 36.

It is to be observed further, that in wheeling, marching, and on all duties, the Men must carry their Firelocks firm and steady on their shoulders, and their right hands are to hang close and motionless down their right sides.

CHAP. IV.

How the Officers are to take their posts again, in the front of the Regiment.

Article 1.

AFTER the Exercise is performed, the commanding Officer orders the Drummer to beat a ruffle, at which the Standard-bearers fix the Standards above their waift-belts.

Art. 2. At the second ruffle, the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, Standard-bearers, Haut-boys, and Drummers march, with an even pace, into the front; the Drummers drawing up in three ranks, as before, upon the flanks of the Regiment.

N. B. At the first ruffle, the flank-men go to the right about, and march into the Regiment; at the second, they come to the left-about as they were, and dress.

Art. 3.

Art. 3. The Major moves into the front together with the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, Standard-bearers, Hautboys, and Drummers ; and remains upon the right flank, till the commanding Officer, in forming the Regiment for firing, gives the word, *To the right!* upon which he moves again into the rear of the first Squadron ; and does not return into the front, till the Regiment is formed, after the firings.



PART IV.
DIRECTIONS
FOR
Performing the FIRINGS.

CHAP. I.

General Observations concerning the
FIRINGS.*Article 1.*

DURING all Firings, silence must be kept in the ranks, and no talking, spitting, or moving about to be permitted; and the Soldiers, as soon as their Battalion, Division, or Platoon has loaded, and shouldered, must cast their eyes instantly to the right, carry well their arms, dress their ranks and files, and not put their right hands into their pouches, or upon their
fire-

firelocks, but stand steady, and without the least motion, as in the performance of the Manual.

Art. 2. In advancing, the first and second Division, and the right Platoon of the third, must look to the left; the left Platoon, and the fourth and fifth Division, to the right: and in retreating, the first and second Division, and right Platoon of the third, to the right; the left Platoon, and the fourth and fifth Division, to the left.

Art. 3. In performing the firings, the ranks and files must be in close order.

Art. 4. In making ready in the firings, the motions must be performed as is directed in the Mannal Exercise; excepting, that the Men are not to wait longer between the three first motions, than while they can tell one, two, hastily; and before the last motion of cocking, they are to allow a little more time; taking care to dress with their firelocks in a line, and to stand to a good recover, with their left hands as high as their eyes.

In firing *standing* and *retreating*, after the three motions which bring the Men to their recover, they must tell four hastily before they cock and kneel; and the flank-man must bring his firelock with a large motion over his head at the kneeling, that the front-rank may come down more together; in performing which motion, they must plant the butt-end strong upon the ground, hold their head and body straight, and their left foot fast, placing their right knee behind it, and

keeping the left knee and heel, and the firelock dressed a line along the whole rank.

N. B. The firelock must be brought close against your breast, in making ready ; and your left hand held as high as your eyes.

When the front-rank kneels, the rear-ranks immediately lock in to the right, and cover the intervals of the files ; the center-rank is to have the right feet of the front between their legs.

Art. 5. The Platoons or Divisions must dress well to the right, in presenting ; the front-rank taking care to level straight forwards, and the rear-ranks to sink their muzzles a little ; the Men must take a good aim, and look boldly into their fire : The Officers are to be careful to make them level straight.

N. B. The butt must rest even with the shoulder, and the Men sink their heads a little, in order to take a better aim.

Art. 6. At the word, *Fire!* the Platoons or Divisions must draw their trickers briskly, that their pieces may be sure to go off ; after which the front-rank rises up nimbly, bringing the firelock down to a level above the waist-belt upon the right side, and no man must be suffered to stoop, when he performs the motions of priming : The rear-ranks are not to fall back, but to remain in close order, when they level their firelocks above their waist-belts.

Art. 7. Every Man must be taught to load quick, and to do all the firing motions properly ;
and

and particular care taken, that none be either omitted or performed but such as are necessary, and according to the following directions :

The Men must half-cock their firelocks in coming down to the priming position, and take hold of their cartridges nimbly, which are to be rolled up tight, and placed in the pouch with the tops downwards : As soon as they have taken out their cartridges, they must bite off the tops, so far, that the powder may fall into their mouths ; then prime, shut their pans, and cast about to charge with quick motions, taking care, in casting about, not to spill any : they must then bring up their cartridges to the muzzle, shake the powder down the barrels, draw their rammers as quick as possible at two motions, shorten them, put them in the barrels, and ram the charge well down, which last particular all Officers must be very attentive to see done ; the rammers must then be nimbly recovered, shortened and returned, and the firelocks † advanced at one brisk motion, without waiting, one for another ; afterwards, when the whole stand in a steady position, they must wait a little, and shoulder at once ; to perform which together, the whole Platoon or Division must look to the right, and take the motion from its flank-man.

N. B. When the Men shoulder, the rear-ranks must incline nimbly to the left, and cover their file-leaders.

† This term is here introduced, in order to avoid a circumlocution, as it will frequently occur throughout the directions for the *firings* : The position is described in Explanation 15, in the Manual Exercise.

The

The cartridges must be always taken regularly out of the pouch, no Man is therefore to put them either under his waist-belt, or elsewhere.

Art. 8. The loading motions are to be performed as quick as possible; and notwithstanding the Platoons and Divisions must be careful to cast about to charge, and afterwards to advance their firelocks with life, and, as much as they can, together; yet, they are to go about immediately after they have shut their pans, and bring up their firelocks as soon as they have returned their rammers, without waiting perceptibly for one another.

N. B. Every Soldier who cannot make ready in equal time, and is too slow in the loading motions, must be taught to do them quicker, and constantly drilled, till he becomes capable, for which the Captains shall be answerable.

Art. 9. The Platoons or Divisions must make ready, and come down instantaneously after the Officers give the word, who are to be three paces advanced, and to face towards them; to give the word loud and short, and to be very attentive to each other's firings, that they may be performed in successive and regular order.

N. B. The Officers must take care, that the Men stand firm upon their ground, before they give them the word to present; and that they level well, and take a good aim, without any hurry.

Art. 10. As a Regiment of Dragoons is told off in ten Platoons, the third Platoon has no occasion to wait, till the first has loaded, and is going

going to shoulder, as is the custom in the Infantry, whose Battalions, being only told off in eight, have consequently less time allowed for loading between every fire.

N. B. The commanding Officer must not give the word to fire by Divisions, till the last Platoon has shouldered.

Art. 11. No Soldier shall presume, on pain of running the gantlope, to omit loading, or to throw away his cartridge; and in case any man's piece should miss fire, he is not to put in more cartridges, but to wipe the flint and pan imperceptibly, and pour in fresh powder; if it should a second time miss fire, without flashing in the pan, it must undoubtedly be either out of order, or the flint bad, for which the Captain shall be answerable: On the contrary, when a piece flashes in the pan, but does not go off, the inside of the barrel must be either dirty, or the powder is not shaken out of the cartridge, for which the Soldier is to be accountable; nevertheless, every such Soldier must continue to perform the loading motions, and not leave the ranks to examine his firelock, or to put in a new flint, without positive orders.

N. B. As often as the firings are to be performed, every Soldier must be supplied with a good new flint, and one that is strong enough to last for thirty fires at least.

Art. 12. The Officers, and non-commissioned Officers, as well those in the Platoons, as in the rear, must keep silence, observe well their men,
and

and not talk, or call out to them, nor quit their posts in the Platoons to dress the ranks: In case any man in the Regiment is ignorant of his business, it is then no proper time to instruct him; but the Officers must remark all such as they observe deficient, in order to have them taught better, after the Exercise is over, or to punish any who have the insolence to be careless.

Art. 13. The non-commissioned Officers posted in the rear during the firings *standing*, or *advancing*, are always to dress in a line, four paces distant from the Regiment; but in *retreating*, they are to come to the right about with their Platoons or Divisions, and stand fast till they have given their fire, after which, they are to go to the left-about as they were, and to march again into the rank of non-commissioned Officers.

Art. 14. In the firings *standing*, or *advancing*, the Officers in the rear of Platoons, are to dress in a line, two paces in the rear of the non-commissioned Officers; but in *retreating*, they are to conform to the directions before given, in order to prevent all disorders and confusion.

CHAP. II.

The manner of forming a Regiment
for Firing.

AFTER the Manual is performed, the commanding Officer gives the word,

1. *Take care to perform your firings!*

N. B. In a Regiment consisting of ten Squadrons, the Colonel-commandant, or Lieutenant-Colonel, as has been already observed, is to command the second Battalion, and to take his motions from the first.

2. *Take care!*

at which word of command the flank-men step out into the front.

3. *Rest your Firelocks!*

4. * *Level your Firelocks!*

Bring the Firelock down to a level above the waist-belt, loosen the hammer-stall quick and imperceptibly, and hold the Firelock steady, and in a line, in rank and file.

* I have introduced this term preferably to *handle your primers!* although the position is the same, as primers are totally out of use.

5. *Prime*

5. *Prime and load!*

Throw up the pan-cover, and, taking off the hammer-stall, and fixing it behind your waist-belt, handle the cartridge briskly, bite off the top, prime, and shut the pan, after which look well to the right, and take the following motions from the flank-man.

6. *Face to the right!*

7. *March!*

The whole Regiment steps off together, with the left foot, the Officers taking their posts as follows :

The Captain of every Squadron commands the right Platoon, and the first Lieutenant, the left ; excepting in the fifth Squadron, where the Captain takes post on the left flank, and commands the tenth Platoon. The rest of the Officers, who are to take post in the rear, march through the intervals where the non-commissioned Officers stood, into the rear of their Platoons : The Standard-bearers, who are constantly to remain with their respective Squadrons, move into the rear-rank, and cover the Officer who commands the left Platoon.

8. *Halt!*

The whole Regiment takes up its ground with a strong step, and the commanding Officer must take particular care, that the files are neither too close, nor too open.

N.B. The

N. B. The Drummers are to stand fast three deep upon the flanks of the Regiment during this movement.

9. *Front!*

at which word of command the Regiment faces at once to its proper front.

10. *Rear-ranks close to the Front! March!*

The rear-ranks move up briskly, and together, to close order.

CHAP. III.

Manner of performing the FIRINGS
standing, advancing, and retreating.

AFTER the Regiment is drawn up, as above, in close order, the commanding Officer gives the word,

1. *Take care to charge by Platoons standing!
the right flank begins!*

The commanding Officers of Platoons then step out three paces forwards, and face to the left towards their Platoons, excepting the Captain upon the left flank of the Regiment, who is to face to the right.

2. *Charge!*

2. *Charge!*

Upon which the Officers proceed to give the word, according to the directions below given in the words of command for the firings: The method to be observed by the Platoons or Divisions in making ready, loading and shouldering *standing*, has been already explained in the preceding general Observations: As soon as a Platoon or Division has fired the number of times ordered, and shoulders, the Officer commanding it must fall briskly into the front-rank again.

3. *Take care to charge by Divisions standing! the right flank begins!**Charge!*

This is performed as is directed in the words of command for the firings.—After the Regiment has fired by Divisions the number of times ordered, the commanding Officer gives the word,

4. *March!*

at which the whole Regiment steps off together with the left foot: The Standard-bearer, together with two non-commissioned Officers from the rear of the center of the third Division, advances four paces from the front-rank; the first and second Division, and the right Platoon of the third must, at the same time, cast their eyes to the left towards the Standard, and the whole take care to march exactly in a line.

N. B. When the ground will permit, the Regiment is to march fifty paces, before it begins to fire; and the Men must carry their arms well in advancing;
must

must march flow; and keep their ranks and files straight, and at their proper distances: After they have marched about fifty paces, the commanding Officer gives the word,

5. *Take care to charge by Platoons advancing! the right flank begins!*

Charge!

At which the Drummers and Hautboys are to cease till the firing is finished; and the Officers instantly proceed to give the word of command, as is below directed for the firings *advancing*.

The Platoons and Divisions, when they are to fire *advancing*, must step out three ordinary paces, making them slow and even; and at the third pace, the front-rank is to come down briskly and together, and the rear-ranks to lock in to the right, as they did in the firings *standing*. As soon as a Platoon or Division has fired *advancing*, it proceeds immediately to load, but must stand fast, and not fall back into the Regiment again, till it has shouldered; the two first Divisions, and the right Platoon of the third, always taking care to cast their eyes towards the Standard in the center, to dress with the Regiment, and to march in a straight line.

As soon as the Regiment has done firing by Platoons *advancing*, the commanding Officer gives the word,

6. *Take care to charge by Divisions advancing! the right flank begins!*

Charge!

This is performed in the manner explained in the words of command for the firings *advancing*.

G

After

After the Regiment has done firing by Divisions, the Drummers beat a *march* again, and the hautboys found; the Regiment keeps advancing a few paces, till the commanding Officer gives the word,

7. *Halt!*

at which the five right Platoons immediately cast their eyes to the right.

8. *Dress!*

the five Platoons cast their eyes towards the Standard in the center again, and the whole dresses in a line with it: When the Regiment stands even and steady, a signal must be given from the center, at which the right wing cast their eyes to the right again.

9. *To the right-about!*

at which word of command, the Captain of the right Division springs forward a little, and the whole Regiment must look to him, in order to go about together.

After the Regiment has faced about,

10. *March!*

upon which the Drummers beat the *troop*, and the whole Regiment steps off together, the center-standard having moved out three paces from the rear-rank; the Regiment must be careful to march quite even in retreating: The fourth and fifth Division, and the left Platoon of the third, incline their heads immediately to the left towards the Standard, that they may be able to march exactly in a line.

N. B. The

N. B. The Officers and non-commissioned Officers must be also careful to march in a straight line.

When the Regiment has retreated a few paces, the word of command is given,

11. *Take care to charge by Platoons retreating!
the right flank begins!*

Charge!

The Drummers cease beating, and the Platoons and Divisions, with the Officers and non-commissioned Officers in the rear of them, as soon as their respective commanding Officers give the word, *Platoon!* must plant their feet strong together, stand perfectly steady, cast their eyes to the right, and dress well; and, at the word, *To the right-about!* they must come briskly about at one motion, upon their left heels, dress nimbly, and stand steady.

At the word, *Make ready!* the Platoon or Division makes ready at four motions, as it is performed in the firings *standing*, and at the fourth, the front-rank comes down — After the word, *Fire!* the front-rank immediately springs up, and all the three ranks level their firelocks briskly, and prime: When they have primed, they throw the butt-end downwards with the right hand, bringing up the muzzle in a line with the right shoulder, and load as quick as possible; during which, they are to stand fast, and not march till they have shouldered, which last motion is always to be performed together.

When the Regiment has done firing by Platoons *retreating*, the word of command is given,

12. *Take care to charge by Divisions retreating!
the right flank begins!
Charge!*

After the Regiment has gone through the firings by Divisions *retreating*, in the manner explained in the words of command for the firings, the Drummers beat the *troop* again; and when the Regiment has retreated a few paces, the commanding Officer orders all the Drummers to beat a *march*; upon which the Regiment comes to the left-about at one motion, stands fast a little, looks to the right, and plants their feet together with the Captain commanding the first Division; after which the right wing casts their eyes towards the center-standard again.—When the Regiment has advanced a few paces, the commanding Officer gives the word,

13. *Halt!*

upon which the whole plant their feet strong and together, and cast their eyes to the right.

14. *Dress!*

at which the right wing cast their eyes to the center-standard again, and dress in the manner already directed in Explanation 8.

Particular care must be taken, that the ranks and files don't fall back, or open after firing, but that, either *standing*, *advancing*, or *retreating*, the firing and loading motions are performed in close order.

The Major and Adjutants must be very careful to keep the Regiment always in a straight line,
in

in *advancing* and *retreating*; they are therefore to be continually riding up and down, in order to dress the men, and to give their assistance and directions where necessary.

CHAP. IV.

Of Parapet-firing.

THE Regiment being dressed and steady, the commanding Officer gives the word,

1. *Take care to perform the Parapet-firing!*

at which the Officers who command Platoons, step two files down, and face to the right: A non-commissioned Officer of those who are posted in the rear of the Regiment, marches into the front-rank of every Platoon not having an Officer in its rear, and posts himself two files below the center, facing likewise to the right.—When the commanding Officer gives the word to *charge*, the Drummers beat *to-arms*, and the Officers and non-commissioned Officers give the word to the two first files, *March!* and step out briskly five paces forward; the right hand man in the center-rank runs to the right of the front, and the two in the rear to the right of the center.—The Officer or non-commissioned Officer then gives the word, *Make ready!* *Present!* when the two first files present, the two next, of their own accord, make ready; and when the two first have fired, the word, *March!* is given, at which the two first files fall back in-

to the Regiment, and the two next at the same time step forward; and so on through the whole, as often as they are to fire; but in those Platoons, in which the number of files is not even, the last file must fire alone in a single rank; and every Platoon is to fire from right to left.

N. B. Officers who are in the rear of Platoons, are always to march into the front-rank, to perform the Parapet-firing; and good non-commissioned Officers must take post in those Platoons, which have no Officers in their rear, as has been already observed.

As soon as the two files have fired, they immediately form three deep again, come briskly to their recover, and half-cock; at the word, *March!* they fall nimbly back into the Regiment, seizing at the same time, and biting off the top of their cartridge; as soon as they have fallen in, they come to the position of levelling their firelocks, prime, cast round the butt-end, bringing up the muzzle, as in the firings *retreating*, and load; when they have returned their rammers, they advance their firelocks at one quick motion, bringing up their right foot forwards, and planting it by the left again; after which they shoulder together, and stand quite steady.

N. B. The files must incline a little to the right, in marching out to fire, that the two next may have sufficient room, without running through one another; they are also to dress to the right, and not to march out further than those of the first Platoon.

When the Platoons have gone through the Parapet-firing, as often as was ordered, the Officers
and

and non-commissioned Officers are not to proceed to fire more; and all the Platoons must finish together; for if one Platoon is not made ready immediately after another, the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer commanding it, does not give the word in proper time. The files must present, and afterwards half-cock together; it is necessary therefore they should be very attentive to the word of command: The Officers are also to forbid all talking and pushing, and to take care that every thing is performed in regular order.

When the Parapet-firing is over, the commanding Officer gives the word,

2. *Rear-ranks open backwards to your former distance!*
3. *March!*

at this word of command, the Officers and Standard-bearers march into the front.

4. *Dress!*

When the whole is dressed, and steady,

5. *Take care!*
6. *To the right form by Squadrons!*

They face to the right, and plant their feet with a strong motion.

7. *March!*

The whole step off together; the Officers and non-commissioned Officers post themselves in the front of the first Division of their respective Squadrons; and the Standard-bearers, in the center of the non-commissioned Officers.

The Squadrons are always to be sized to the right, with the tallest men in the front-rank, the next in size in the center, and the shortest in the rear.—When the whole is in proper order, the commanding Officer gives the word,

8. *Halt!*

at which they take up their ground with a strong step.

9. *Front!*

They face to the front, after which the commanding Officer marches to the head of his own Squadron.

CHAP. V.

Of passing in Review.

Article 1.

WHEN the Regiment is formed by Squadrons, and his Majesty orders it to march, the General or Colonel gives the word of command to the first Squadron :

1. *Take care!*
2. *Rest your Firelocks!*
3. *Shoulder your Firelocks!*
4. *Rear-ranks close to the front!*
5. *March!*
6. *To the right wheel by Divisions!*
7. *March!*

The

The commanding Officers of the other Squadrons must be attentive to the Officer who commands the first Squadron, and take care to give the word at the same time; and the Drummers are to begin beating together.

N. B. At the word of command, *To the right wheel by Divisions!* the first Division of the Colonel's Squadron stands fast; the rear-ranks of the others are to close to the front in their wheeling, and to perform it with as much exactness and regularity as the Infantry can.—When a Division is to wheel, the commanding Officer gives the word, *Halt!* upon which the rear-ranks close up briskly to the front, and the front-rank keeps moving their feet only; he then gives the word, *Wheel!* upon which the three ranks wheel together, taking care to keep an even step, to march slow, and to carry their arms well: As soon as the Division has wheeled, he gives the word, *Halt! Dress!* upon which all the three ranks stand fast at once, and dress themselves: The Officer then gives the word, *March!* and lifts up his left foot, the front-rank stepping off with the same, at the same time.—When the Officer, in wheeling to the right by Divisions, gives the word, *Halt! To the right wheel!* the three ranks must cast their eyes to the left; and, after they have wheeled, and the word, *Halt!* is given, immediately to the right again.

Art. 2. The Squadrons are to march off in the following order: In the front of all,


the inferior Staff-Officers;
the Surgeons;
the Kettle-drummer on horseback;
the Hautboys;

the

the General, or Colonel ;
 the Captain ;
 the Subaltern-Officers ;
 the non-commissioned Officers, with the Stan-
 dard-bearer, in a single rank ;
 the three Drummers ;
 the Squadron, in four Divisions, all sized to
 the right ;
 the twelve Supernumeraries ;
 the Farrier, in the rear of all.

All the other Squadrons are to march in the rear of the General's ; and the Recruits, in order to be distinguished, are to have green branches stuck in their hats.

* * *

 From hence to the end of the Chapter, is the same in the *Dragoon-Regulations*, as from Article 7. p. 38. to the end of the Chapter, in the *Horse* ; excepting, that as often as the word *Troop* occurs, you are to read *Squadron* ; and instead of *Trumpeter* in Art. 11. *Drummers*.

CHAP.

7

-

d

of
n-

be

the
re-

on

dy.
nd

m-

kes

nd
om
hen
be-
nd

ime, every Officer taking care, as soon as his
Platoon has fired the last time, and shoulders, to
step

1

A
o
b
ir

3

I

—
—
—
—
—
—
—
—
—
—

.....

CHAP. VI.

How the Officers are to give the word of command through the firings.

AS soon as the Regiment is formed in close order for the firings, the Colonel, or commanding Officer gives the word,

Take care to charge by Platoons standing; the right flank begins!

Charge!

At the word, *Charge!* the Captain upon the right gives the word, *Platoon! Make ready! Present! Fire!*

When the first makes ready, the Captain upon the left flank gives the word, *Platoon!*

When the first presents, the tenth makes ready.

When the first fires, the tenth presents and fires.

When the tenth comes down, the Officer commanding the second gives the word, *Platoon!*

When the tenth presents, the second makes ready.

When the tenth fires, the second presents and fires; and so on, one Platoon after another from the right and left to the center successively: When the sixth or last Platoon fires, the first is to begin again, and the same to be performed a second time, every Officer taking care, as soon as his Platoon has fired the last time, and shoulders, to
step

step back into his former post again, and dress with the front-rank.

The Officers must be also very careful to fire in regular and successive order, and to keep five Platoons always loaded, which, as the Regiment is told off in ten, may be done without much difficulty.

When the sixth Platoon has fired the second time; the commanding Officer gives the word,

Take care to charge by Divisions standing! the right flank begins!

Charge!

upon which the Officers proceed again, as follows :

The Captain upon the right, *Division! Make ready! Present! Fire!*

When the first makes ready, the Captain upon the left gives the word, *Division!*

When the first fires, the fifth makes ready, presents, and fires; and so on the second, fourth, and lastly the third, in regular succession; but with this restriction, that no Division makes ready, till the preceding one has fired, to the end that three, or at least two Divisions may be always loaded.

When the third Division has fired, the first begins the second round, the Regiment performing the same again as before, and every Officer, after his Division has fired the last time, and shoulders, stepping into the front-rank again.

After

[To face p. 108.]

THE FIRINGS

BY

DIVISIONS, STANDING.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Division!				
Make ready!				Division!
Present!				
Fire!	Division!			Make ready!
				Present!
	Make ready!		Division!	Fire!
	Present!			
	Fire!	Division!	Make ready!	
			Present!	
Division!		Make ready!	Fire!	
		Present!		
Make ready!		Fire!		Division!
Present!				
Fire!	Division!			Make ready!
				Present!
	Make ready!		Division!	Fire!
	Present!			
	Fire!	Division!	Make ready!	
			Present!	
		Make ready!	Fire!	
		Present!		
		Fire!		



The FIRINGS

1.	2.	3.
Platoon !		
Make ready!		
March !	Platoon !	
Present !	Make ready!	
Fire !	March !	Platoon !
	Present !	Make ready!
	Fire !	March !
		Present !
		Fire !
		Present !
Platoon !		Fire
Make ready!		
March !	Platoon !	
Present !	Make ready!	
Fire !	March !	Platoon !
	Present !	Make ready!
	Fire !	March !
		Present !
		Fire

After the Regiment has finished the second round, the commanding Officer gives the word to the whole,

March!

and when it has marched a few paces forwards,

*Take care to charge by Platoons advancing!
the right flank begins!*

Charge!

upon which the Captain upon the right begins the fire, and gives the word,

Platoon! Make ready! March! Present! Fire!

at the word, *March!* the Platoon with firelocks cocked, steps out three small paces, very slow, the front-rank coming briskly down at the third.

When the first Platoon makes ready, the Captain commanding the tenth gives the word, *Platoon!*

When the first marches out, the tenth makes ready, and presently after marches out.

When the first fires, the tenth presents and fires.

When the tenth fires, the second presents and fires.

After the second, the ninth, and so on in the same successive order, till the whole has fired two rounds: The fires are to follow close and quick, and one half of the Regiment notwithstanding be always kept shouldered, for which reason the men must be taught to load as quick as possible.

When

When the Regiment has finished the second round, the commanding Officer gives the word,

*Take care to charge by Divisions advancing!
the right flank begins!*

Charge!

upon which the Captain commanding the General's Squadron,

Division! Make ready! March! Present! Fire!

When the first Division is marched out, the Captain upon the left, gives the word, *Division!*

When the first fires, the fifth makes ready, marches out, presents and fires; and so on, the second, fourth, and lastly the third.

When the third Division has fired, the first begins again, and so on as before, every Officer taking care not to make ready till his preceding Division has fired, that three, or at least two Divisions may always remain loaded.

When the Regiment has fired two rounds by Divisions advancing, the Colonel, or commanding Officer gives the word,

Halt! The whole Battalion face to the right-about!

*Take care to charge by Platoons retreating!
the right flank begins!*

Charge!

The Captain upon the right then begins, and gives the word,

*Platoon! To the right-about! Make ready!
Present! Fire!*

When

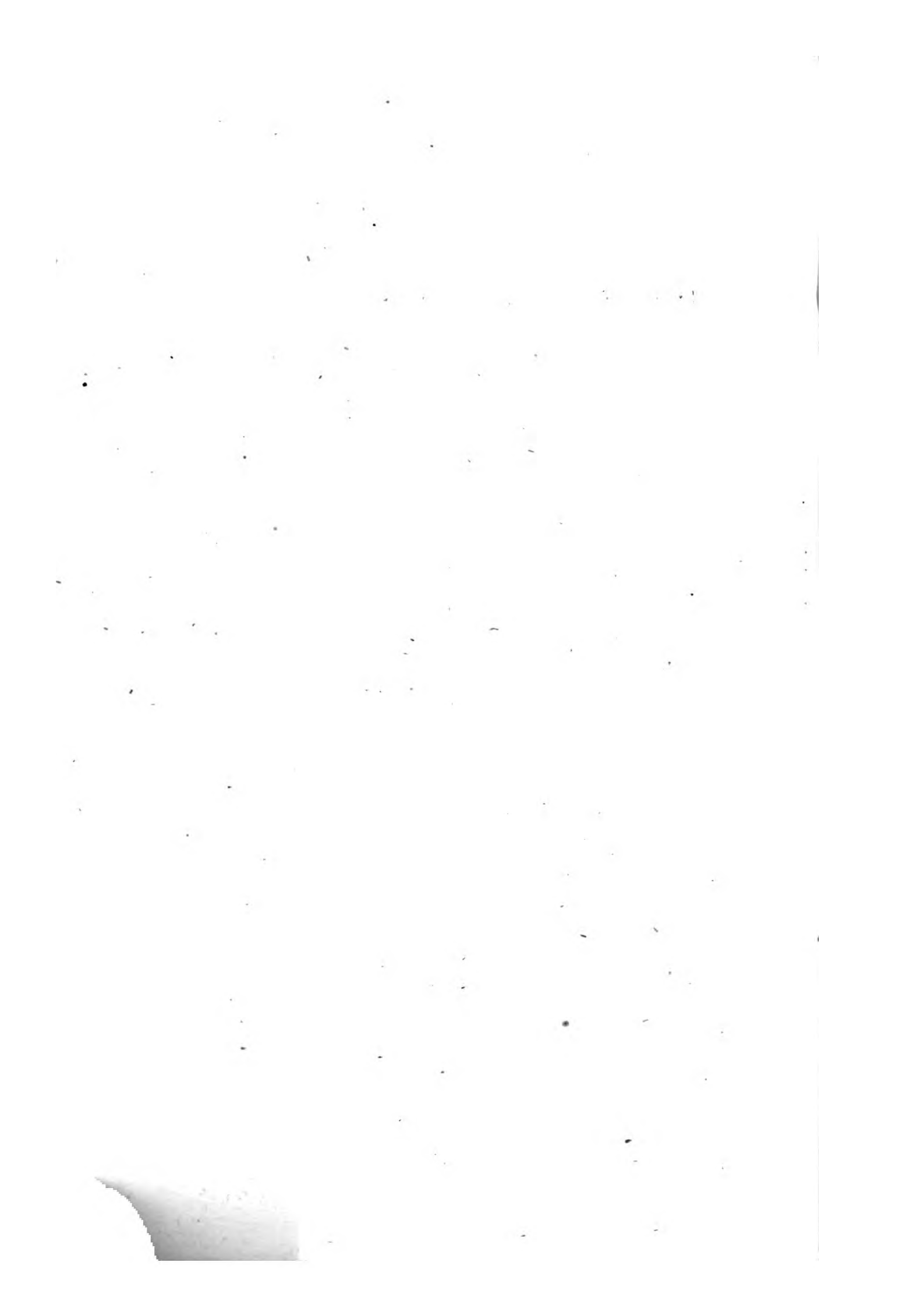
[To face p. 110.]

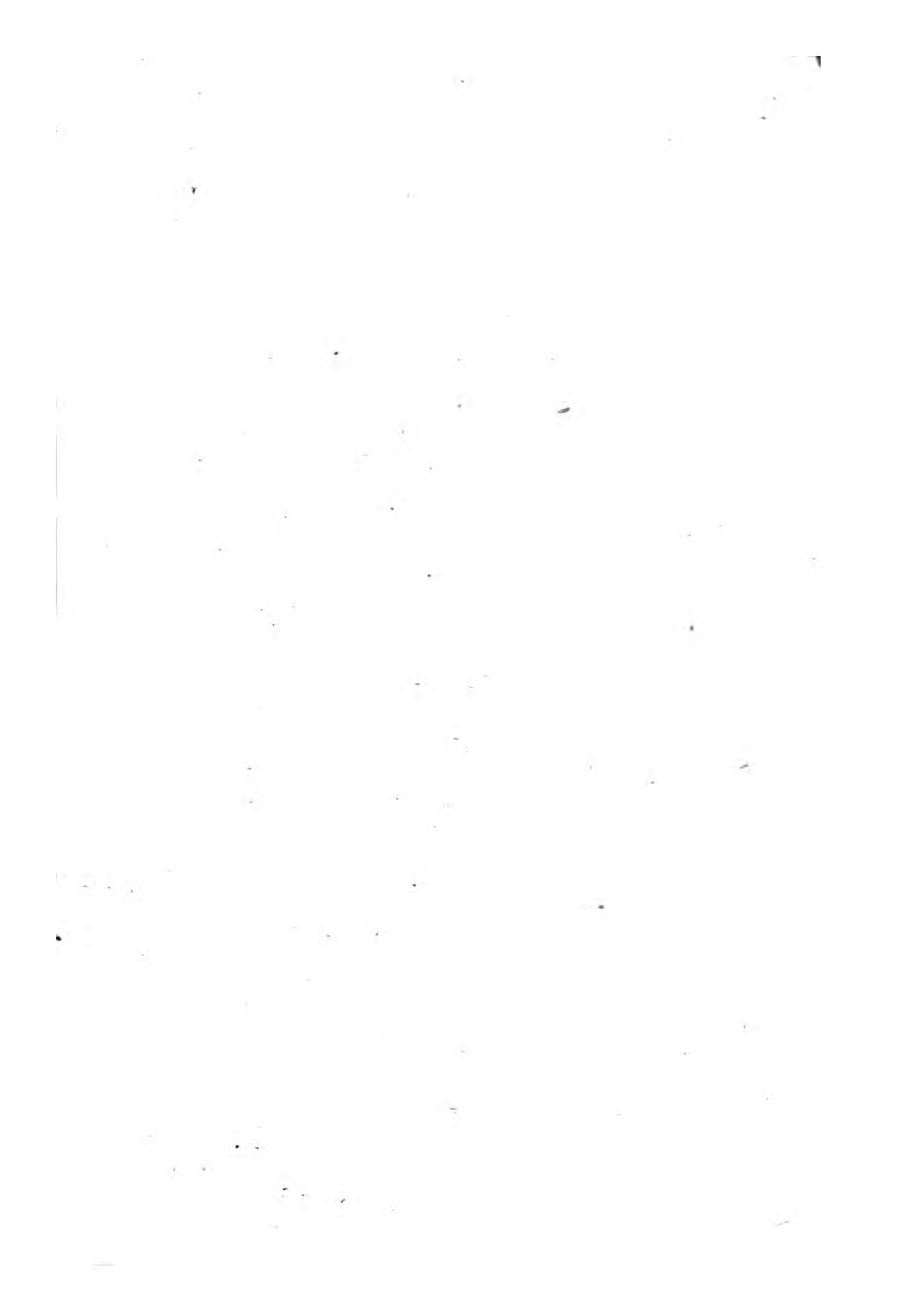
THE FIRINGS

BY

DIVISIONS, ADVANCING.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Division!				
Make ready!				
March!				Division!
Present!				
Fire!				Make ready!
	Division!			March!
				Present!
	Make ready!			Fire!
	March!		Division!	
	Present!			
	Fire!		Make ready!	
		Division!	March!	
			Present!	
		Make ready!	Fire!	
Division!		March!		
		Present!		
Make ready!		Fire!		
March!				Division!
Present!				
Fire!				Make ready!
	Division!			March!
				Present!
	Make ready!			Fire!
	March!		Division!	
	Present!			
	Fire!		Make ready!	
		Division!	March!	
			Present!	
		Make ready!	Fire!	
		March!		
		Present!		
		Fire!		





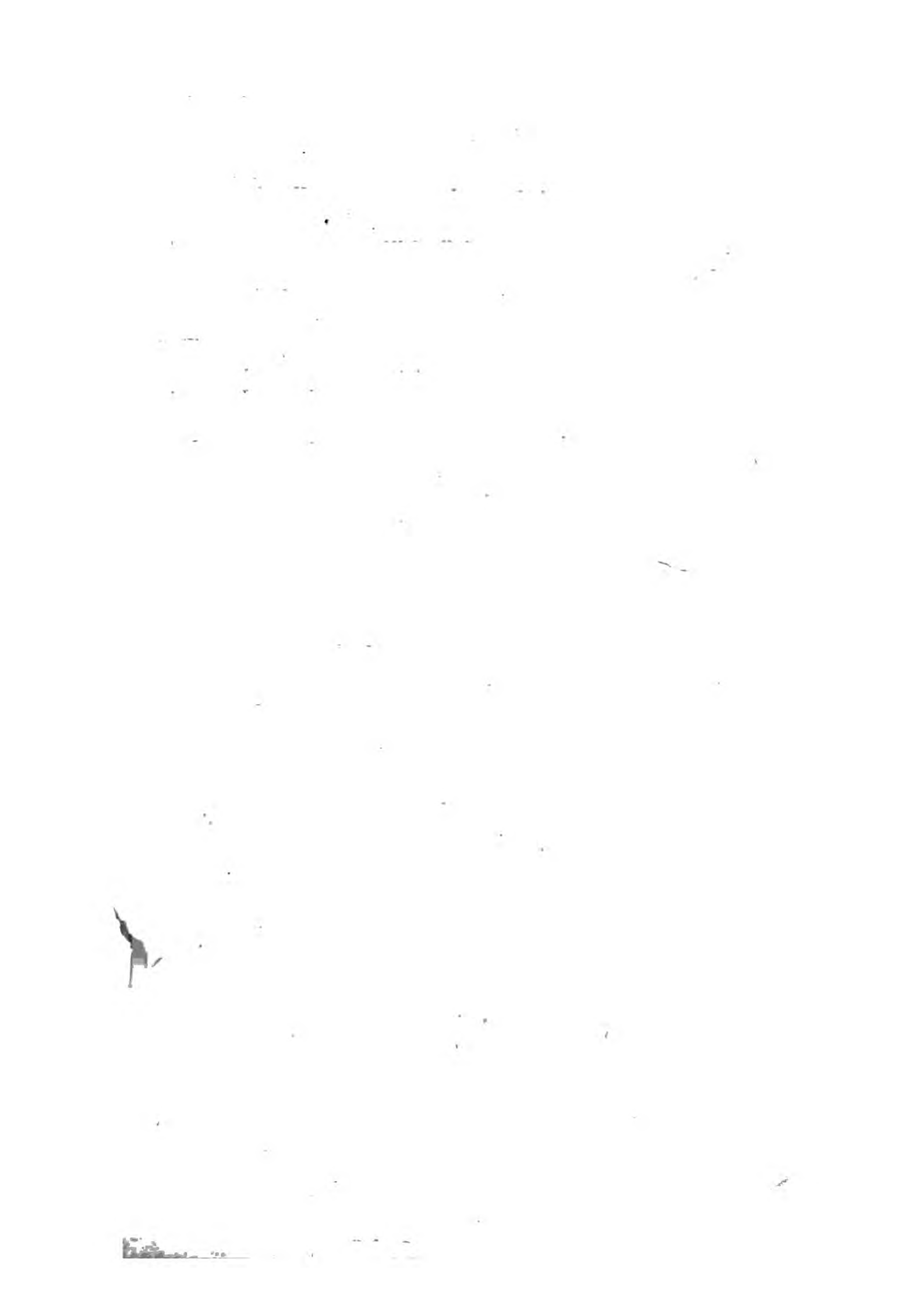
[To face p. III.]

THE FIRINGS

BY

DIVISIONS, RETREATING.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Division!				
To the right about!				
Make ready!				Division!
Present!				To the right about!
Fire!	Division!			Make ready!
	To the right about!			Present!
	Make ready!		Division!	Fire!
	Present!		To the right about!	
	Fire!	Division!	Make ready!	
		To the right about!	Present!	
Division!		Make ready!	Fire!	
To the right about!		Present!		
Make ready!		Fire!		Division!
Present!				To the right about!
Fire!	Division!			Make ready!
	To the right about!			Present!
	Make ready!		Division!	Fire!
	Present!		To the right about!	
	Fire!	Division!	Make ready!	
		To the right about!	Present!	
		Make ready!	Fire!	
		Present!		
		Fire!		



Div
To
abo
Ma
Pre
Fire

Div
To
abo
Mak
Pres
Fire

	about :	
	Make ready!	Fire !
	Present !	
	Fire !	

When the first Platoon comes about, the Captain upon the left gives the word, *Platoon!*

When the first makes ready, the tenth comes about.

When the first fires, the tenth presents and fires.

When the first makes ready, the second receives the word, *Platoon!* and so on in the same successive order through the whole, from right and left to the center.

When the sixth has fired, the first begins again, and is followed by the others: And when the second round is finished, the commanding Officer gives the word,

Take care to charge by Divisions retreating!
the right flank begins!

Charge!

Which is to be performed twice round in the same manner as by Platoons retreating, with this exception, that no Division is to make ready till the preceding one has fired; care being taken at the same time, that two Divisions are always kept shouldered, and three loaded.



PART V.

CHAP. I.

Regiments at a Review, or at the opening of a Campaign to be always complete.

Article 1.

AT Reviews in times of peace, or at the opening of a Campaign, every Regiment shall be always complete under arms, in Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men; nor shall any Colonel suffer a deficiency in his Regiment, of either man or horse, on pain of being cashiered.

Art. 2. At a Review, or at the opening of a Campaign, every Squadron must be composed of the following numbers:

- 6 Commissioned Officers;
- 12 Non-commissioned Officers;
- 3 Drummers;
- 132 Dragoons;
- 1 Farrier;
- 1 Surgeon;
- 148 Horses, exclusive of the commissioned Officers' horses.

Thus

Thus every Regiment under arms will consequently have,

- 32 Commissioned Officers, including the two Adjutants, one of which is appointed to the General's Squadron, and the other to the Major's;
- 60 Non-commissioned Officers ;
- 15 Drummers ;
- 660 Dragoons ;
- 5 Farriers ;
- 748 Horses.

N. B. The Kettle-drummer and Hautboys are appointed to the General's Squadron.

Art. 3. A Regiment of ten Squadrons is to consist of the following numbers under arms :

- 64 Commissioned Officers ;
- 120 Non-commissioned Officers ;
- 30 Drummers ;
- 1320 Dragoons ;
- 10 Farriers ;
- 1480 Horses.

The Kettle-drummer and Hautboys are also appointed to the General's Squadron.

Art. 4. The Men are required to be in perfect health, and the best order, nor must any Invalids, or such as are become incapable of doing the duty, be suffered to continue in a Regiment, for which the Colonel shall be answerable ; neither shall any

H

be

be entertained under the age of 25 years, but such only as are grown to maturity, and of vigorous constitutions.

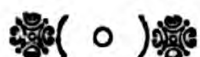
The Horses are also to be constantly preserved in fit condition for service; and the Colonel shall be in like manner responsible, that he keeps none in the Regiment, which are any ways distempered.

* * *

✎ The two succeeding Chapters which finish this PART of the *Dragoon-Regulations*, are literally the same as the two last of PART IV. of the *Horse*.



REGU-



REGULATIONS
FOR THE
PRUSSIAN
H U S S A R S.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

A Regiment of Hussars consists of ten Squadrons, containing the following number of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, inferior Staff-Officers, and Private Men.

		N ^o . of Persons.	
Principal Staff-Officers.	1 General, or Colonel . . .	}	3
	1 Lieutenant-Colonel . . .		
	1 Major		
Inferior Staff-Officers.	1 Quarter-master . . .	}	26
	1 Surgeon-major . . .		
	10 Surgeons		
	10 Farriers		
	2 Gunsmiths		
2 Stock-makers			
Commissioned Officers.	9 Captains, including the two Captain- Lieutenants . . .	}	33
	14 Lieutenants . . .		
	10 Cornets		
Non-commis- sioned Officers, and Trumpeters.	8 Non-commis- sioned Officers pr. Squa- dron	}	90
	1 Trumpeter pr. Squa- dron		
Private . . . 102 pr. Squadron			1020
Effectives Total			1172

N. B. The six extraordinary Lieutenants are appointed to the six eldest Squadrons.

CHAP. II.

The manner of forming, and fizing a
Regiment of HUSSARS in Squa-
drons.

Article 1.

THE Squadrons are to be drawn up in three ranks, and always told off in three Divisions; the center-division is to consist of twelve files, and the other two of eleven only.

Art. 2. As soon as the Squadrons are formed, the Officers, and non commissioned Officers post themselves about six paces in the front of the Regiment in single ranks; the non-commissioned Officers drawing up in the rear of the Officers.

Every Captain is then to examine the number of files, and to appoint the Officers and non-commissioned Officers, after which he returns to his former post in the front, and gives the word of command,

Draw your Swords!

Officers, and non-commissioned Officers march to your posts!

Art. 3. The Officers are posted as follows:

A Squadron having four Officers, the Captain marches at the head of

H 3

the

the first Division, and the eldest Lieutenant in the rear : The second Lieutenant at the head of the second; and the Cornet at the head of the third.

A Squadron having only three Officers, the Captain leads

the first Division, and the Lieutenant marches in its rear : The Cornet leads the second ; and the Quarter-master the third.

Art. 4. The eight non-commissioned Officers are posted in the following manner :

One non-commissioned Officer upon the right flank of the first Division ;
 One upon the right of the second ;
 One upon the right of the third ;
 One upon the left of the third ;
 One in the rear of the first ;
 One in the rear of the second ;
 Two in the rear of the third.

N. B. Only one non-commissioned Officer can march in the rear of a Squadron, which has but three Officers to it, because the Quarter-master leads the third Division.

Art. 5. The Trumpeters march in the front, and the Surgeons and Farriers on the flanks of their respective Squadrons.

Art. 6. When the Squadrons are told off in the manner above described, and are to march off, the

the Colonel, and instantly after him every Captain gives the word of command to his respective Squadron, as follows :

Center- and Rear-ranks, move forward to close order !

March !

and after the rear-ranks have closed, to his first Division,

March !

Art. 7. Great care must be taken in marching that the ranks and files keep well closed, and that the wheelings, whether by Squadrons or Divisions, are performed with the utmost celerity : When the Divisions in front quicken their march, those in the rear must do the same, that the whole may preserve their ranks dressed, and at equal distances.

Art. 8. In wheeling to the right, the Men are to cast their eyes to the left, and come about as quick as possible ; and in wheeling to the left, they must look to the right : The commanding Officer, when his Division is to wheel, must give the word aloud,

Halt !

Wheel !

upon which the Men are instantly to cast their eyes to the flank which wheels, and as soon as they are come about, the word of command is given,

Halt !

Dress !

upon which the Squadron, or Division closes from the right and left flank to the center; and after it is properly dressed, the Officer gives the word again,

March!

N. B. The rear-ranks must keep up as close as possible, and the Divisions be very careful to preserve their proper distances, that whenever they are ordered to wheel to the left, and form, they may do it at once, without having occasion to shuffle, or make the least movement, after they have taken up their ground.

When the Squadrons form, an interval of thirty paces must be left between each.

Art. 9. The General's, or Colonel's Squadron takes post upon the right flank; the next eldest, upon the left; and so on the others, according to seniority, from right and left to the center.

Art. 10. The Men are to cast their eyes steadily to the right; and, in an engagement, to leave an interval of eight paces between the ranks; they must also take care to keep their files well closed, and to have no openings but for the non-commissioned Officers in the front-rank.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Concerning the Review of a Regiment
of HUSSARS, and their Exercise on
horseback.

Article 1.

AT the King's arrival, the Colonel, and every commanding Officer gives the word to his respective Squadron,

Draw your Swords!

and after his Majesty has reviewed them standing,

Center- and rear-ranks, move forward to close order!

March!

By Divisions march!

upon which the first Division marches off in the following order :

1. the Trumpeter ;
2. the General, or Colonel, at the head of the first Division ;
3. the Lieutenant, at the head of the second ;
4. the Cornet, at the head of the third ;
5. the Captain-Lieutenant in the rear.

N. B. All the Squadrons are to follow in the same order,

Art. 2.

Art. 2. After every Squadron has marched past by Divisions, and the word of command is given,

Form Squadrons!

the Divisions are to march up in full gallop, the second forming upon the right of the first, and the third upon the left of it.

Art. 3. After the Regiment has marched past by Squadrons, and is formed again, the General, or Colonel moves into the front of the center, and gives the word of command,

By fours to the right-about!

By fours to the right-about, as you were!

By whole Squadrons wheel to the right-about!

By whole Squadrons to the right-about, as you were!

By whole Squadrons wheel to the left-about!

By whole Squadrons to the left-about, as you were!

N. B. The flank which wheels is always to come about in full gallop; and the Squadron must take care to preserve an even front, and to keep the ranks and files well closed.

Art. 4. After the wheelings are performed, the commanding Officer gives the word,

Charge by Divisions!

upon which the first Division of every Squadron moves forward in full gallop, and forms in two ranks, letting their sabres hang over their wrists: The first rank fires their carbines; after that, the second advances

vances before the first, and fires theirs; then the first rank advances before the second, and fires one pistol; after which, the second advances before the first, and does the same; then the first rank advances again, and fires the second pistol; which is also followed and performed in like manner by the second rank; but great care must be taken in the performance of this evolution, that the Hussars don't discharge their pieces behind one another, and so destroy themselves.

N. B. When the first Divisions gallop back to join the Regiment again, they are to draw up in the rear of the second Divisions of their respective Squadrons, there to load their carbines and pistols, and then move up to the right of the second Divisions, and dress in a straight line: The men are not required, after they have performed the charge, to fall exactly into their proper places again, but only into their former ranks.

Art. 5. After the first Division of every Squadron has charged, the second of every Squadron is to form two deep, which is to be done by the rear-rank doubling up in such a manner, that the six right-hand men become divided upon the right of the front- and center-rank, and the six left-hand men upon the left of the front- and center-rank.

N. B. Detachments, or Squadrons of Hussars must be always formed two deep, when they engage the enemy; for which reason, after they have performed, at a Review, their wheelings by fours, and whole Squadrons, they are to go through their *manœuvres* in two ranks; the first Division therefore, after they have

have charged, must consequently fall into the Regiment again in that order.

Art. 6. As soon as the first Divisions have fired their carbines, and both pistols, and begin their retreat, the third Divisions are to move out, and perform their charge in the same manner.

Art. 7. When the third Divisions have fired their carbines and pistols, and begin their retreat, the second Divisions are to advance about thirty paces upon a gallop sword in hand, at which distance they are to raise themselves off their saddles, and make a stroke; their charge being to second that of the third Divisions, and also to cover their retreat.

The third Divisions draw up briskly in the rear of the first Divisions of their respective Squadrons, load their carbines and pistols, and afterwards move up to the left of the second Divisions, and dress in a straight line.

Art. 8. The commanding Officer is then to give the word,

Two center-squadrons, march forwards!

upon which the two center-squadrons form in four troops, leaving an interval of thirty paces between each, and move, upon a trot, in a straight line forwards to the distance of about 600 paces, where the commanding Officer of every Troop gives the word,

Halt!

Dress!

To the right-about wheel by fours!

upon which they wheel about, and then stand fast, the rear-ranks making a front towards the other Squadrons.

Art. 9. The General, or Colonel then gives the following word of command,

Prepare to charge by Squadrons from the flanks!

upon which the commanding Officers of the first and second Squadron upon the right flank, and those of the ninth and tenth upon the left flank, give the word,

March!

To the right and left wheel by Divisions!

March!

upon which the Divisions wheel on a brisk trot, and afterwards gallop, one behind another, to the right and left of the four Troops, which represent the enemy, to the distance of about 400 paces from their flanks.

N. B. The Squadrons, before they reach the flank of the enemy in moving out to charge, are to detach a few files from their third Divisions, who, dispersing themselves round about, are to annoy the enemy, and gain time for the Squadrons to form opposite to their flanks.

Art. 10. When the four Squadron have galloped so far, that the second from each flank, comes opposite by Divisions to the flank of the four Troops which represent the enemy; and the first is so far advanced, as to command their rear, the

the commanding Officers give the word to their respective Squadrons as follows :

To the right } wheel and form in Squadron !
To the left }

Art. 11. When the Squadrons are formed, the commanding Officers are to detach six files from the right of every Squadron, who, dispersing themselves round about the enemy, are to attack them in flank and rear, and fire their pistols : After which they are to retreat to their respective Squadrons, and the six next files are to be detached, and to discharge their pistols at the enemy in the same manner : This method of attack must be continued till a *march* is sounded, and they are to charge in Squadron.

N. B. The files, which are detached against the enemy, are always, when they retreat, to fall in upon the left of their respective Squadrons.

Art. 12. When the four flank-squadrons detach their files against the enemy, the four Squadrons which stood fast, must each likewise detach six files from the right flank of their first Division, who are to disperse themselves about the enemy, and to fire their pistols in the manner before directed for the other files ; and the Squadrons must advance, sword in hand, after them, at the distance of about 200 paces, and at a moderate pace, waiting till they observe the enemy give ground, and fall into confusion ; immediately upon which, a *march* is sounded, and all the Squadrons, both from front and flanks, sword in hand, and setting up a shout, make the grand charge, galloping at full

full speed to within about twelve paces of the enemy, at which distance they are to raise themselves off their saddles, make a stroke, and then stand fast.

N. B. When the signal for a general attack is given by sounding a *march*, single files are no longer to be detached against the enemy, because the charge must then be made by whole Squadrons.

The two center-squadrons which represent the enemy, are to stand fast, without detaching any files.

Art. 13. After the charge is thus over, the *call* is sounded, upon which the four Squadrons which attacked the flanks of the enemy, go to the right-about by fours, and wheel, the first and second to the right, and the ninth and tenth to the left, and retreat till they come to dress in a straight line with the four front squadrons, where they are to come to the right-about again as they were by fours, and then stand fast.

Art. 14. When the *call* is sounded, the two center-squadrons likewise, which were advanced in the front to represent the enemy, are to march into the Regiment again, and, when they come in a straight line with the other Squadrons, they are to halt, to come to the right-about as they were by fours, and instantly dress their ranks to the right.

The method of attack just above described, is what the Hussars are to make use of against regular Cavalry : It will be impossible for an enemy, when thus assaulted at once in front, flank, and rear,

rear, to maintain his ground, or avoid falling into confusion.

The Hussars are never to engage with their whole force at first, but must always keep a large body in reserve; and as soon as they perceive the enemy fall in disorder, they are then to make the general attack with all their fury, and totally defeat them.

N. B. When parties of Hussars are detached from the Army, they must be always furnished with spades, mattocks and hatchets, in order to be able to assist themselves upon emergencies, where such utensils shall happen to become necessary.

Art. 15. The Regiment being formed again, the Colonel gives the word,

Take care the whole to march forwards!

every commanding Officer is then to give the word to his respective Squadron,

Whole Squadron, march!

upon which the Squadrons move forward, on an easy trot; at the distance of about fifteen paces, they fall into a brisk trot; afterwards into a full gallop, keeping that pace as far as from 90 to 120 paces, where they charge the enemy.

N. B. The Officer upon the right flank, must look well to the commanding Officer in the front of the center, so as not to advance too fast, and every Squadron cast their eyes to the right.

When a Regiment, or any greater number begin their march on a trot, the commanding Officers of Squadrons must take great care that their respective Squa-

Squadrons are never further advanced in front, than those upon their right.

Art. 16. When the Squadrons arrive at the above mentioned distance, every commanding Officer gives the word,

Halt!

Dress!

upon which the whole halt at once, lift themselves off the saddle, and, raising their swords above their heads, make a stroke, sinking down at the same time upon the saddle again.

Art. 17. The Colonel, or commanding Officer then gives the word,

March!

upon which the whole disperse to the front in full gallop, excepting the commanding Officer, who, together with the Trumpeter, stands fast upon the right of the ground from which the Squadrons dispersed; and, after a few minutes, orders the Trumpeter to sound the *call*, upon which the men rally instantly, and draw up in their respective ranks to the left of the Trumpeter, but are not to regard either their proper Divisions, or right-hand men, that they may be able to form the sooner.

N. B. When the *call* is sounded, the Squadrons are to form three deep again, because, after this evolution, they are not to charge any more: And the private men must be strictly enjoined to be very attentive to the signal for forming, at which every one is to gallop back at full speed, and fall into his respective
I rank

rank and Squadron, as quick as he possibly can, it not being necessary, as is before observed, to regard either his former Division, or right-hand man : And his Majesty, at Reviews, will take particular notice, whether Regiments form, after they receive the signal for it, with that celerity which he expects.

Art. 18. The commanding Officer, as soon as the Regiment is formed, gives the word as follows,

Halt !

Dress !

Return your Swords !

Dismount !

the rear-ranks rein briskly back to former distance, return their carbines, dismount as quick as possible, link their horses without waiting perceptibly for one another, unstrap their carbines, and, shouldering them, march into the front together.

N. B. The horses are to be linked in the following manner ; every man ties the reins of his bridle to those of his right-hand man by a running knot, about a span's length from the bit.

When the Squadrons dismount at Reviews, their horses must be taken care of by Burghers, or Countrymen.

CHAP. IV.

The Exercise on foot at a Review.

Article 1.

WHEN the Squadrons have marched clear of their horses, the first and second are to incline to the left, the fourth and fifth to the right, and close up to the third; the sixth and seventh are, in like manner, to incline to the left, the ninth and tenth to the right, and close to the eighth; all which must be performed running.

N. B. As it is not material amongst the Hussars, whether their ranks are sized or not, the eldest therefore, and such as can be most depended upon, shall be always posted in the front-rank.

Art. 2. When the Squadrons have closed to their center, the General, or Colonel in the front of the five right Squadrons, and the Lieutenant-Colonel in the front of the five left Squadrons, give the word of command to their respective wings, as follows:

Prepare to charge!

N. B. As the Hussars have their carbines already loaded, the next word of command is,

Rear-ranks close to the Front!

March!

at which the Captains fall in upon the right flanks of their Squadrons, and the eldest Lieutenants upon the right flanks of their second Divisions, those belonging to the fifth and tenth Squadrons excepted, the Captains of which are to fall in upon the left flanks, and their eldest Lieutenants upon the right; and one Lieutenant, or Cornet upon the right of each second Division.

CHAP. V.

Manner of performing the FIRINGS.

Article 1.

AFTER the Regiment is formed in close order for the Firings, the Colonel gives the word of command as follows, to the five right Squadrons, which are told off in ten Platoons, and the Lieutenant-Colonel to the five left; which are also told off in the same order:

Take care to charge by Platoons standing! the right flank begins!

upon which the commanding Officers of Platoons step out three paces forwards, and face to the left towards their Platoons, excepting the Captains who command the fifth and tenth Squadrons, who are to face to the right.

Art. 2.

I. D. The Officers must be very regular and successive order, and likewise to keep five Platoons always loaded, which, as each wing of the
I 3 **Regi-**

G S by

Ar

Art. 2.

Charge!

The Officers then proceed to give the word of command, as follows:

The Captain who commands the Colonel's Squadron,

Platoon!

Make ready!

Present!

Fire!

When the Captain commanding the first Platoon, gives the word, *Make ready!* the Captain commanding the tenth, gives the word, *Platoon!*

When the first Platoon presents, the tenth makes ready.

When the first has fired, the tenth presents and fires.

When the first presents, the Officer commanding the second, gives the word, *Platoon!*

When the first fires, the second makes ready.

When the tenth has fired, the second presents and fires; and so on, one Platoon after another from right and left to the center successively: When the sixth, or last Platoon has fired, the first is to begin again, and the same to be repeated till the whole have fired four times: And every Officer, as soon as his Platoon has fired the last time, and shoulders, must step back into his former post again, and dress with the front-rank.

N. B. The Officers must be very careful to fire in regular and successive order, and likewise to keep five Platoons always loaded, which, as each wing of the

Regiment is told off in ten, may be done without much difficulty.

Art. 3. After the Regiment has fired four times round by Platoons, the Parapet-firing is to be performed, for which the following word of command is given,

Officers, and non-commissioned Officers, take care to perform the Parapet-firing!

At the first word of the foregoing command, the Officers who command Platoons, step two files down, and face to the right.

A non-commissioned Officer of those who are posted in the rear, marches into the front-rank of his Platoon, two files below the center, and faces likewise to the right.

Art. 4. When the commanding Officer gives the word to *fire*, the Officers and non-commissioned Officers command the two first files, *March!* and step out briskly five paces forward; the right-hand man in the center-rank runs to the right of the front; and the two in the rear, to the right of the center.

Art. 5. The Officers and non-commissioned Officers then proceed, as follows:

Make ready!

Present!

Fire!

When the two first files *present*, the two next, of their own accord, *make ready*; and when the two first have fired, the word, *March!* is given,
at

at which the two first files fall back into the Regiment, and the two next at the same time step forward, and so on through the whole, as often as they are to fire; but in those Platoons, in which the number of files is not even, the last file must fire alone, in a single rank; and every Platoon must fire from right to left.

N. B. Officers who are in the rear of Platoons, must always march into the front-rank, to perform the Parapet-firing; and good non-commissioned Officers must take post in such Platoons, as have no Officers in their rear.

Art. 6. As soon as the two files have fired, they immediately form three deep again, come briskly to their recover, and half cock; at the word, *March!* they fall nimbly, and well closed, into the Regiment again, seizing, at the same time, and biting off the top of their cartridge; as soon as they have fallen in, they come to the position of levelling their carbines, prime, cast about to charge, and, as soon as they have loaded, and returned their rammers, they advance their carbines before their left shoulders, bringing up at the same time their right feet to a line with their left; after which they shoulder together, and stand quite steady.

N. B. The files must incline a little to the right, in marching out to fire, that the two next may have sufficient room, without running through one another; they must also dress to the right, and not march out further than those of the first Platoon.

Art. 7. The files must present, and afterwards half-cock together; it is necessary therefore they
1 4 should

should be very attentive to the word of command :
The Officers must also forbid all talking, and
take care that every thing be performed in regu-
lar order.

CHAP. VI.

Of passing in Review.

Article 1.

AFTER the Regiment has performed the
Parapet-firing twice round, the word of
command is given as follows :

*Rear-ranks open backwards to your former
distance !*

March !

As the rear-ranks open, the Officers are to step
out into the front again ; and as soon as the files
are dressed and steady, the following word of
command is given,

Sling your Carbines !

at which the carbines are to be slung over the left
shoulder, in the same manner as performed by the
Dragoons, when they are to mount.

Draw your Swords !

this word of command is performed, as on horse-
back.

Rear-

Rear-ranks close to the front!

March!

March by Divisions!

upon which the Squadrons wheel by Divisions, and march off in the rear of the first Squadron, in the same manner as on horseback: When they have marched by the King, and taken up their former ground again, the Recruits are to be ordered out, and formed in the front.

Art. 2. Every commanding Officer of a Squadron is to march by the King at the head of his own Recruits; and after they have been reviewed, and have joined their Squadrons again, the Colonel, and Lieutenant-Colonel give the word as follows to their respective wings:

Return your Swords!

To the right-about!

March!

upon which the Squadrons run to their horses, and as soon as they stand properly posted by their sides:

Mount!

which word of command is to be performed without regular motions, and with all possible celerity.

Art. 3. When the Hussars are mounted again, the Colonel, or commanding Officer orders out the grand-guard, and afterwards marches the remainder of the Regiment in regular order into their quarters.

C H A P.

CHAP. VII.

Of the particular Duties on which
HUSSARS are to be employed.*Article 1.*

HUSSARS are to be employed in reconnoitring the enemy, and discovering his motions; and, as often as Officers are detached on such commands, all that will be required of them, is, to make their observations with certainty, so as not to deceive the commanding Officer afterwards by false intelligence; they are moreover, on such parties, to avoid engaging with the enemy, as being sent out for a different purpose.

Art. 2. Hussars are also to be made use of for the distant advanced-posts, to prevent the army from being falsely alarmed, or surpris'd by the enemy.

The Officers on such posts are in a particular manner required to render themselves judges of their situation, and to post their sentries in the most proper places.

Art 3. Small patrols, composed of Hussars are to be kept going round the army, in order to prevent desertion, particular care being taken, that one patrol constantly succeeds another, so as to render it impossible for any thing to escape them.

Art. 4.

Art. 4. Parties of Hussars are also to be sent out, to distress the enemy, by depriving them of forage and provisions; by surprising their convoys, attacking their baggage, harassing them on their march, cutting off small detachments, and, in short, by seizing all opportunities to do them as much damage as they possibly can.

Art. 5: Hussars are moreover to be employed in raising contributions; and when the army marches, they are to compose the advanced-guard; reconnoitring the front and flanks carefully, and sending intelligence to the Commander in chief in good time, whenever they discover any kind of danger.

They are likewise to form the rear-guard, and to cover the baggage of the Army.

CHAP. VIII.

Of marching and wheeling.

Article 1.

REGIMENTS of Hussars are to march off their ground by the right flank, in the same manner as the Horse and Dragoons do; and the Colonel, or commanding Officer is to give the word for it, as follows:

Center-

Center- and rear-rank, move forward to close order!

To the right wheel by Divisions!

March!

When a Regiment is marching by Divisions, and is to form in Squadrons, the word of command for it is given,

Form Squadrons!

upon which the first Division of every Squadron is to incline upon a trot so far to the right, that the second can march up in a direct line upon a trot also; but the third is to incline to the left, and move up in full gallop.

Art. 2. When a Regiment, or Squadron is to reduce, the word of command for it, is:

Form Divisions!

upon which the first Division of every Squadron moves forwards on a gallop so far as to allow room for the second to draw up in its rear; the first inclining at the same time in such manner as to cover the second: As soon as the Squadrons are reduced, and the Divisions have got their proper intervals, they are to fall into their ordinary pace again.

CHAP. IX.

Of ACTION.

Article 1.

IN general, the Hussars must regulate their conduct in action, by the orders which they are to receive the day before for that purpose, from his Majesty, or the General who commands in chief.

Art. 2. The Officers must acquire an absolute authority over their men, and never suffer them to attack the enemy, or to break, under any pretence whatsoever, before they receive orders for it; to which they are always to pay the strictest obedience, and to execute them, upon every occasion, with the utmost alacrity.

Art. 3. After the action is over, every Regiment must furnish two Officers, two non-commissioned Officers, and twenty men; who are to collect their wounded, and to convey them to the nearest villages, there to be taken care of till a general hospital is appointed, and they can be removed.

What

* * *

What remains, lastly, to be observed, is, that the Hussar-Regiments, in all other particulars, both relating to the service in camp, and garrison, are strictly to be governed by the *Regulations* for the Horse and Dragoons, and to obey every Article therein set forth, with all promptitude and exactness.



REGU-

REGULATIONS

FOR THE

CAVALRY.

PART V.
OF
FIELD - DUTY.

CHAP. I.

Of the Decampment and March of
an Army.*Article 1.*

WHEN the Army is to decamp, the * Horse must sound *to boot and saddle* when the Infantry beat the *general*, and the Generals of the day are to take care that these signals are given at the time ordered.

N. B. All the Regiments of † Horse in both lines are to sound *to boot and saddle* together ; when the Infantry

* — The *Dragoons* are to beat the *general*, and *assembly* together with the Infantry.

† All the Regiments of *Dragoons* in both lines are to beat the *general* together ; when the Infantry therefore give the signal for it, the Drummer belonging to the Standard-guard of that Regiment which is encamped upon
the

fantry therefore give the signal for the *general*, the Trumpeter belonging to the Standard-guard of that Regiment which is encamped nearest, must sound the *call*, and the Trumpeters of all the other Standard-guards must be attentive to take the signal from him, and sound the same; upon which, the Trumpeters of the whole Regiment are to assemble in the front of the Standards, and sound *to boot and saddle* to the right flank; from the right flank to the left; and from the left flank, back to the front of the Standards again.

The Trumpeters are to begin, and leave off sounding together, they must all therefore take care to be in readiness before-hand, and those of one Regiment be attentive to those of another.

† *Art. 2.* After *to boot and saddle* is sounded, the rolls are to be called, the men to make ready for the decampment, to saddle their horses, and to pack up their baggage; afterwards, when the

the right, must also do the same; and the Drummers of all the other Standard-guards must be attentive to follow the signal from him; upon which the Drummers of the whole Regiment are to assemble in the front of the Standards, and to beat to the right flank; &c. as in the *Horse*.

The Drummers are to begin, and leave off beating together, &c.

† *Art. 2.* After the beating of the *general*, the rolls are to be called, the men to make ready for the decampment, to saddle their horses, and to pack up their baggage: Afterwards, when the *assembly* is beat, the tents are to be struck, the horses to be bridled, and the Squadrons to be drawn up in two single ranks on the sides of their respective streets; the right-half of the front-center-and rear-rank on one side, and the left-halves of the same on the other. *Dragoon-Regulations.*

Infantry beat the *assembly*, the horses are to be bridled, and the troops drawn up in their respective streets, the front-rank upon the flanks, next to that the center, and next to the center, the rear-rank.

N. B. As his Majesty has observed that the Cavalry have not sufficient time to pack up their baggage, if they don't begin to strike their tents before the beating of the *assembly*; so they are permitted to strike their tents immediately after they sound * *to boot and saddle*; but the commanding Officers of Regiments shall be answerable, that every man packs up his baggage properly, and that their Regiments are in readiness to march off at the same time with the Infantry.

General Officers' guards, and orderly Officers, or Men, are to march off when † *to boot and saddle* is sounded.

‡ *Art. 3.* When the Troops are drawn up in the streets in the order above described, the Standard-guard marches off; the Standard-bearers take hold of the Standards, and stand fast in that position till the Colonel gives the word of command to mount.

N. B. When the Colonel commanding the Regiment upon the right, gives the word to mount, the com-

* — immediately after the *general*, &c. *Dragoon-Regulations.*

† — when the *general* beats. *Drag. Regul.*

‡ *Art. 3.* When the Squadrons are formed in the streets in the above order, the standard- and rear-guards are to march off; &c. *Drag. Regul.*

manding

manding Officers of all the Regiments in both lines must be careful to do the same.

† *Art. 4.* When the Regiments are mounted, and the first Troop belonging to the first Regiment

† *Art. 4.* When the Regiments are mounted, and the first Squadron of the first Regiment upon the right marches out on the parade, all the Squadrons of every Regiment in both lines are to do the same, the Colonels giving the word of command,

To the right and left march by fives!

at which the Squadrons march out in the following order.—In the front of the right half-squadron

Two Drummers; behind them
the Captain; behind the Captain
two Officers; behind the Officers
six non-commissioned Officers in a single rank; and
behind them
the half-squadron by fives.

In the front of the left half-squadron

One Drummer; behind the Drummer
the first Lieutenant; behind him
two Officers; behind the Officers
six non-commissioned Officers in a single rank; and
behind them
the half-squadron by fives.

Art. 5. After the right and left half-quarter-ranks of every Squadron have wheeled to the right and left from their respective flanks, and marched out on the parade, the next half-quarter-rank upon the right flank, wheels to the left, and then to the right; the next half-quarter-rank upon the left flank, wheeling at the same time, first to the right, and then to the left; which brings them both to a line, in which they march up to their ground on the parade; the remainder of the front-

ment marches out on the parade, all the Troops of every Regiment in both lines are to do the same, the Colonels giving the word of command,

To the right and left march by fives!

upon which the Troops march into the front in the following order :

the Trumpeter ;
 the Captain ; behind him
 the two Subaltern-Officers ; behind the Subaltern-Officers
 the non-commissioned Officers in a single rank ; behind them
 the Troop by fives.

N. B, As soon as the whole has marched out on the parade, the Standard-bearers are to mount together, and immediately to join their respective Squadrons.

Art. 5. When the first quarter-ranks, or five men upon the right and left flank of every Troop have marched out on the parade, and stand fast, the next five from the right flank of the Troop,

rank, and after that the center- and rear-rank, performing the same.

After the Squadrons have marched out on the parade, every commanding Officer gives the word,

Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and Drummers march forwards!

at which they march before the center of the Squadron, the Officers in a single rank, the non-commissioned Officers in two ranks in the rear of the Officers ; and the Drummers in the front of all, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

are

are to wheel to the left, and then to the right; and at the same time the next five from the left flank, are to wheel to the right, and then to the left, and both march up in a line to their ground; and so on the remaining two quarter-ranks of the front-rank; after which the center-rank is to perform the same, and after that, the rear.

When the Troops have marched out on the parade, every commanding Officer of a Squadron gives the word,

*Officers, non-commissioned Officers and Trumpeters
march forwards!*

upon which they march before the center of the Squadron, the Officers in a single rank, the non-commissioned Officers in two ranks, in the rear of the Officers; and the Trumpeters in the front of all: The commanding Officer then completes the files, tells off the Divisions, appoints the Officers, and non-commissioned Officers, and gives the word,

March to your posts!

at which they take their posts.

N. B. Regiments are always to be formed in Squadron after this method.

Art. 6. When the Squadrons are thus formed, every commanding Officer gives the word to his respective Squadron, to draw their swords.

Art. 7. When the Infantry beat the *march*, every commanding Officer gives the word to his Squadron,

Center- and rear-ranks move forwards to close order!

March!

after which they are to stand fast, till ordered to march off.

N. B. The Squadrons must be very attentive to one another's motions, that the whole may close their rear-ranks to the front, together with the first Squadron upon the right.

Art. 8. When the Army is to march off, the first Squadron upon the right receives the word of command,

To the right wheel by Divisions!

March!

and all the Squadrons in both lines must observe well the first Squadron, and take care to do the same together.

N. B. The || Trumpeters are to sound when the Squadrons receive the foregoing word of command to march.

Art. 9. When the Army has marched about the distance of hundred paces from its ground, the || Trumpeters are to sound the signal for returning swords, and after that to leave off.

N. B. When the Men are to return their swords on the march, the || Trumpeters must sound the signal for it, upon which the Squadrons are to return their

|| The Drummers are to beat, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

swords.

swords at regular motions together, in like manner, when they are to draw their swords, the signal for it must be given, and the motions performed together.

Art. 10. In the passage of all defiles, the commanding Officers of Squadrons, must take care that the Men march close, and that they rank up, and form briskly as soon as they have passed through them; the front-squadron must be also mindful not to march too fast, so that the whole column may be always preserved in regular order.

Art. 11. When a column of Cavalry is ordered to march up, and form by half- or whole squadrons, it must be performed by the whole column at once, if the ground will permit; but where there are defiles, the Squadrons are only to form, as soon as they have passed through them.

Art. 12. No Man must be suffered to leave his Division, and in case any one has occasion to ease himself, the Officer commanding the Division to which he belongs, is to leave a non-commissioned Officer with him, who must bring him up again; and all Officers shall be answerable for any Men wanting in their Divisions, when the Army arrives in camp.

Art. 13. When a Regiment has any prisoners, they are to march in the rear on foot, leading their horses in their hands, and guarded by a non-commissioned Officer and six Men; if there are any sick horses in the Regiment, the prisoners

are to lead those, and their own to be rid by others.

Art. 14. Every Squadron is to march in regular order, whether by Divisions, by half- or whole squadrons, and must keep their exact distances, according to the Directions given in the first Part of these *Regulations*.

Art. 15. The Lieutenant- and Major-Generals are to march in the front of their brigades, and to take care that every thing is strictly observed, both according to the particular disposition of the march, and the general orders of these *Regulations*.

Art. 16. The Brigade-majors, and all Officers belonging to the Staff, are to attend the Commander in chief.

Art. 17. No Regiment shall be allowed to have more than one chaise, and the waggon which carries the *strong-box*: The bat-horses are to march with their Regiments, and if any Regiments are discovered to have more carriages than their appointed number, the Commander in chief shall order them to be plundered.

Art. 18. The Women shall not be suffered to appear with the Regiments on their march, but must be conducted by the Provost-general, and march out of camp before the Army, with the Quarter-masters.

Art. 19.

Art. 19. When the Army is to halt on its march, the columns of Cavalry are to march up by Squadrons close behind one another, and the Men may then be permitted to dismount, but not to go far from their horses; if the Army makes a long halt, and parties are detached to water, Officers are to be ordered out with them; but they must not be suffered to go beyond the distance of 150 paces from the column at furthest, that when the Army breaks up, and the Men are to mount, the whole may be at hand, and afterwards march off again in regular and complete order.

CHAP. II.

Of an Army's March into a new Encampment.

Article 1.

WHEN the Army is to decamp, and march into a new Encampment, the strength of the Quarter-masters' covering party, must be determined by order from the Commander in chief: The Quarter-master-major of every Regiment, together with a † Quarter-master per Squadron, and a Man per Troop, are to assemble at the

† — a Quarter-master, and two Men per Squadron are to assemble, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

place

place appointed, in order to march off with the covering party, and mark out the ground for the Encampment.

The Quarter-master-majors are to bring the Quarter-masters and Men of their respective Regiments to the place of parade, to keep them together upon the march, and be responsible for any who quit their party to maraude; they must also march them in the order, in which their several Regiments are to encamp; and every Quarter-master-major is to draw up the ten Men, appointed to assist him in marking out the Encampment, in three ranks, with one Quarter-master on the right flank, in the front-rank, and the remaining three in the rear.

When any alarm happens, and there is a prospect of danger, the Quarter-masters and their Men, are to join the grand-guards and covering parties; or, if the number of Officers on the spot is sufficient, the Quarter-masters are to draw up their Men in separate bodies by fives regimentally, which the commanding General can regulate, or dispose as he thinks best.

Art. 2. The actual Quarter-master-majors, when their Regiments take the field, must march with them, mark out their Encampments, and do all their duty, as Quarter-masters; no Officer therefore shall be suffered to do it for them.

N. B. The Quarter-masters shall do all their proper duty in the field, such as is the mounting of grand-guards, standard-guards, and general Officers' guards.

Both

Both the Quarter-masters belonging to a Squadron, are never to be ordered out on party together, because the Army may have occasion to march unexpectedly.

Art. 3. The Commander in chief is immediately to post the necessary grand- and village-guards for the security of the Army; a communication of double videts from one grand-guard to another must be also made, and small patrols detached to reconnoitre, and prevent the enemy from attempting to surprize any of the posts.

Art. 4. If the enemy should be discovered, the Quarter-masters and their Men must have immediate notice of it, in order to secure time to mount, and to join the grand-guards and covering parties; if it be a large body of the enemy, and the commanding Officer thinks it necessary to collect as much force as possible, all the out-posts and guards must be assembled, and drawn up in order of battle.

Art. 5. As soon as the Army arrives at the new camp, the commanding Officers of Squadrons give the word,

Draw your Swords!

upon which the * Trumpeters sound, and the Regiments march into their respective Encampments, as marked out by their Quarter-masters, the Squadrons wheeling to the left by Divisions to take up their ground.

* — the Drummers beat, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

Art. 6.

Art. 6. When the first Squadron of every Regiment has taken up its ground, the Men are to keep their swords drawn, and the * Trumpeters to sound, till the whole Regiment is marched up, after which the Colonel gives the word of command,

Standard- and rear-guard march out !

upon which a Cornet from every Squadron, together with the † Trumpeter, brings the Standard to the center-squadron ; the Men for guard, are, at the same time, to march out, to move regularly to the center, and draw up in two ranks, the standard-guard forming the first, and the rear-guard, the second ; after the guards are formed, the Colonel gives the following words of command,

Return your Swords !

The whole Regiment to the right-about by fours !

March !

upon which the ‡ Trumpeters sound the *troop*, and the Regiment marches by Troops in regular order into the Encampment, first the rear-rank, then the center, and lastly the front.

N. B. All this is to be performed as quick as possible, in order to relieve the Men ; the guards are not to return their swords, till the Standards are planted.

* — the Drummers beat, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

† — a Drummer, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

‡ — the Drummers beat the *troop*, and the Regiment marches by Squadrons, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

Art. 7.

Art. 7. When the Squadrons march by fours into their respective streets, the Men are to draw up facing their tents in a rank entire, as they are divided in messes ; and after the whole Regiment has marched in, the Colonel gives the word of command,

Dismount !

upon which the whole are to dismount together.

N. B. The Standard- and rear-guards go to the right-about by fours together with the Regiment ; and after the Regiment has moved into its Encampment, they march to the front of the center, where the commanding Officer of the standard-guard orders the Standards to be planted, and the Kettle-drums to be placed before them, for which purpose, five Men belonging to the center-squadron must be in readiness, to take the Standards from the Standard-bearers : After the Standards are planted, the duty-men march to their several Troops, or Squadrons, one Man excepted, who is to dismount, and stand sentry behind the Standards, holding the center one in his hand ; after the duty-men have dismounted, they are to march to their guard, and the commanding Officer of the standard-guard, as also the non-commissioned Officer commanding the rear-guard, draw up their guards in a rank entire, and post their sentries.

Art. 8. The old picquet is not to unsaddle their horses, after the Regiment has marched into its Encampment, nor the Men to take off their swords, or to pull off their boots, but to remain in their entire mounting, and not to leave the Regiment ; afterwards, when the camp is pitched, and the horses have been once fed, the picquet of every

every Regiment is to turn out, and the commanding Officer to march it to the right flank in the front.

N. B. The picquets are not to turn out, till ordered by the Commander in chief, who will make them stronger, or weaker, according as circumstances may require.

Art. 9. The rolls must be called four times at different hours, after the Army has marched into a new camp, that no Man may have an opportunity to maraude, or otherwise absent himself without leave; marauding must be also prohibited on pain of hanging.

N. B. On all pay-days likewise the rolls must be called a few times in the afternoon.

Art. 10. As soon as the Army has marched into its ground, and the camp is pitched, the Generals of the day, as also the Commander in chief, are to post the proper grand-guards according to situation and circumstances, after which the covering parties of horse and foot are to march into camp.

CHAP. III.

Of the Encampment of an Army.

Article 1.

AFTER the Regiments have marched into their ground in the manner before directed, the

the tents must be immediately pitched in a regular and straight line, * fifteen to every Troop.

N. B. The picquets for the horses must be also pitched in a straight line, at the distance of two paces from the tents.

The Regiments on the left wing are not to encamp to the left, but always to the right.

Art. 2. As it is his Majesty's pleasure that the † Subaltern Officers of every || Troop shall encamp in the same tent, they must therefore not be permitted to have separate tents, but each is to be pitched in a straight line in the rear of their respective || Troop: The effective Captains encamp fifteen paces further back, with their tent-doors facing the interval between the || Troop-tents and the horses.

Art. 3. The Field-Officers shall encamp fifteen paces in the rear of the Captains, opposite to the center of the streets of their Squadrons, in a

* — Thirty to every Squadron, fifteen being pitched on each side of every street. *Drag. Regul.*

† The number of Officers' tents for a Regiment of Dragoons, is no greater than that for a Regiment of Horse according to the *Regulations*, which must undoubtedly be a mistake, as it is impossible that five Officers (which is the number of Subalterns to every Squadron) can encamp with any manner of convenience or decency in one tent; especially as there appears to be no extraordinary allowance made in the size of it: It may therefore be presumed, that there are two tents for the Subaltern-Officers of every Squadron, pitched in the rear of their respective half-squadrons.

|| — Squadron. *Drag. Regul.*

straight

straight line with the Field-Officers and Captains of the Infantry ; the Colonel, or commanding Officer of the Regiment, in the rear of the center, and the other Field-Officers in the rear of their respective Squadrons.

N. B. As the distance from the last company-tent in the Infantry, to the Field-Officers' tents is sixty paces ; but in the Cavalry, from the Subalterns' tents to the Field-Officers, only thirty ; so the interval between the Officers' tents of the Infantry, is consequently thirty paces larger than between those of the Cavalry, because thirty paces more are allowed for the depth of a Squadron, than of a Company : But when the Encampment of Squadrons is not thirty paces deeper than that of the companies of Infantry, the intervals between the Officers' tents of the Cavalry must be larger.

Art. 4. The inferior Staff-Officers shall encamp fifteen paces in the rear of the Field Officers, in a straight line with the inferior Staff Officers of the Infantry ; the Quarter-master-major's tent to be pitched in the center ; the Chaplain's and Solicitor's on the right flank, and the Surgeon's on the left.

N. B. The Chaplain and Solicitor are to encamp in the same tent.

Art. 5. The baggage of the Regiment shall be pitched fifteen paces in the rear of the inferior Staff-Officers, and all the futtlers encamped twenty paces in the rear of the baggage ; the commanding Officers are therefore to suffer no futtling- or coffee-tents to be pitched in the front.

Art. 6.

Art. 6. The standard-guard-tent shall be pitched at the head of the center-squadron-street, in a parallel line with the first tent, and the rear-guard-tent between the baggage and the suttlers: The Standards shall be planted five paces from the guard-tent, and the Kettle-drums placed close before them.

† N. B. The guards are not to have picquets for their arms, but are to lay them over their curasses.

Art. 7. The King's head-quarters is between the lines, in the center of the Infantry: All that belong to the General-Staff must be encamped at head-quarters, as the Quarter-master-general, the Adjutant-General, the Brigade-Majors, and the Engineers.

Art. 8. Field-Marsbals, and Generals of the Infantry and Cavalry, encamp in the Army, as they stand in the order of battle; but the Lieutenant- and Major-Generals encamp in the rear of their respective brigades.

† This N. B. omitted in the *Dragoon-Regulations*, and instead of it, the following:

N. B. The standard-guards are to have twelve picquets, and the rear-guards eleven, fixed in a straight line for the arms.

The Standards belonging to a Regiment consisting of ten Squadrons are not to be planted in the front of the interval between the two Battalions; but those of each in the front of their third Squadron respectively; they are therefore to furnish separate standard- and rear-guards. *Drag. Reg.*

N. B. No General-Officer shall leave his post, or canton himself in any other than that which is assigned him, without his Majesty's permission, under the penalty of paying 200 ducats to the Invalid-fund; but such Generals as are in a bad state of health, are allowed to quarter themselves in the most contiguous villages; nevertheless, when they are Generals of the day, they must remain with their respective brigades.

‡ *Art. 9.* The depth of ground allowed for Squadrons must be sufficient both for the 74 horses of every Troop, and for the Lieutenant's and Cornet's, which are to stand in a line with those of the Men; the distance between the tents must be also equal, and an interval of five paces allowed for the back-streets.

As soon as the Army has marched into camp, and the tents are pitched, communications must be immediately made from one Regiment to another, of a sufficient breadth for a whole Squadron to march through in front; but this is only required to be

‡ Where there is sufficient room for the Encampment of the Army, every Regiment must be allowed so many paces distance, as to be able to form in marching out; exclusive likewise of an interval of three * Rhineland rods and a half between every Squadron. *Drag. Reg.*

Art. 9. The depth of ground allowed for the streets, must be sufficient for the 74 horses, which compose the half of every Squadron, and one side of every street, and for those of the Subaltern-Officers, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

* The Rhineland rod amounts to twelve feet English measure; so the whole interval between every Squadron must consequently be about sixteen paces.

done

done in camps, wherein the Army is to halt for some time.

Four camp-colours must be fixed upon the four lines on the parade, in a straight line from the Infantry, but the front is not to be levelled; nevertheless, the ditches and hollows are to be filled up, that the Squadrons may be better able to form.

Art. 10. Two necessaries must be made for every Squadron in both lines; 200 paces in the front of the first line, and 200 in the rear of the second, which are to be filled up every four days; no Soldier therefore, or other person shall presume to go to any other place, to prevent which the sentries are required to be watchful on their posts, that the camp may not be rendered offensive.

A large square kitchen, with proper conveniences, is to be made in the rear of the baggage of every Squadron, nor shall the least fire be suffered, on any account whatsoever, in the back-streets, or amongst the tents.

C H A P. IV.

Of Standard- and Rear-guards.

Article 1.

EVERY Regiment gives a standard-guard, and a rear-guard; the standard-guard consists of

L 2

One

One Cornet, one Corporal, one || Trumpeter,
and seventeen private Men ;

The rear guard of

One Corporal, and sixteen private Men ;
and no Troop of Horse, or Squadron of Dragoons shall furnish any separate, or other guard for its baggage, for which the Colonel shall be answerable.

N. B. The Colonel is to have one *orderly* man, but the other Field-Officers none.

Every Troop of Horse, and Squadron of Dragoons, must give three Men for the night-watch, who are to be posted over the horses without arms, in order to prevent their getting loose, and striking one another.

Such Troopers as have lost their horses, are to mount the General's guards, standard-and rear-guards.

Art. 2. When the Infantry are to beat the *assembly* at seven in the morning, and the quarter-guards give the signal for it, the * Trumpeter belonging to the standard-guard of the Regiment encamped nearest to the Infantry, sounds the *call*, upon which the Trumpeters of all the standard-guards in both lines, are to do the same.

Art. 3. The Men for guard from every Squadron, are to be drawn up, and reviewed in their several streets half an hour before, after which the Quarter-masters make them ground their arms, till the Infantry and Dragoons beat the *assembly*.

|| — Drummer, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

* — the Drummer belonging to the standard-guard of the Regiment upon the right, is also to give the signal for it, upon which the Drummers of all the standard-guards in both lines are to do the same. *Drag. Regul.*

N. B. The

† N. B. The standard- and rear-guards are always to mount completely accoutred with cuirasses, boots and spurs, and, after they have relieved the old guards, are to take off their cuirasses, and stand sentries without them.

Art. 4. As soon as the Drummers of the Infantry and Dragoons begin beating the *assembly*, the Men for guard stand to their arms in the streets of their respective Squadrons, and the Quarter-masters make them shoulder; after the *assembly* is beat, the Adjutant, standing opposite to the center of the Regiment, gives the word of command,

Standard- and rear-guard march!

upon which the standard- and rear guard march out upon the parade, taking care in marching to dress themselves well to the right.

N. B. The guards march out three deep, the standard-guard drawing up on the right, and the rear-guard on the left.

After they have marched out on the parade, the Adjutant gives the word,

Face to the left, and right!

upon which the duty-men of the two Squadrons on the right flank face to the left; those of the two Squadrons on the left, to the right, and those of the center-squadron stand fast;

March!

they close from right and left to the center;

† This N. B., relating only to the Horse, is omitted in the *Dragoon-Regulations*.

Halt!

they stand fast, with the feet next the front foremost; and at the following word of command,

Front!

they face briskly to the front, and stand steady.

N. B. When the guards close from right and left to the center, the rear-guard is to march to the left, and the non-commissioned Officers, and the ¶ Trumpeter to post themselves before the center.

Rank and file!

upon which the Men of both guards take post from right to left by files; after the guards are formed, the commanding Officer draws his sword, one non-commissioned Officer, together with the ¶ Trumpeter, takes post upon the right flank of the standard-guard, and the other non-commissioned Officer upon the right flank of the rear-guard.

Art. 5. While the quarter-guards of the Infantry are beating the signal round, the Officer of the standard-guard gives the following words of command,

Rest your Carbines!

Shoulder your Carbines!

Rear-ranks close to the front!

March!

To the right wheel by Divisions!

March!

¶ Drummer in the Dragoons.

upon

upon which both guards march off, the rear-guard marching through the center-street.

N. B. All the guards of a whole wing of Cavalry, must be very careful to march off, and relieve together with the Infantry.

The old guards are to rest their Carbines, and to † sound a *march*, at the approach of the new ones.

Art. 6. When the new standard-guard is drawn up opposite to the old one, the || Trumpeter ceases, and the new guard rests their Carbines: The Officers, and non-commissioned Officers are then carefully to deliver all their orders, after which both guards must shoulder their Carbines again, and face to the right; the new guard marches off, and takes up the ground of the old, and the old guard that of the new.

N. B. The new guard is to form in a single rank in marching off, and the non-commissioned Officers to take post upon the right flank: The old guard, on the contrary, is to form in three ranks, to face towards the Standards, and to carry their Carbines shouldered.

Art. 7. As soon as the new standard-guard has taken up its ground, the commanding Officer orders the sentries for the relief to turn out briskly, and stands fast with shouldered arms, till the posts are relieved.

Art. 8. After the relieved sentries have joined their guard, and the Drummers of the Infantry

† —to beat a *march*, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

|| Drummer in the Dragoons.

beat the final for the *troop*, the Officer of the old standard-guard gives the following words of command,

Rest your Carbines!

Your Carbines high in your right arms!

Rear-ranks close to the Front!

March!

and when the quarter-guards of the Infantry are trooped off, he also marches off, * sounding the *troop*; and all the guards in both lines must be careful to march off together.

N. B. When the old guard marches off, the new one rests their Carbines, but the trumpet is not to sound.

Art. 9. After the old guard is marched off, and drawn up again on the parade, the Men are to open a little, after which the Officer gives the word of command,

Rest your Carbines!

Club your Carbines!

Face to the right and left!

March!

the † Trumpeter then sounds the signal for dismissing, and the Men march to their tents.

N. B. The Men must always carry their arms shouldered at the relieving of a guard, whether it rains, or not; and in marching off, high in their right arms, and never clubbed.

* — beating the *troop*, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

† — the Drummer then beats the signal, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

The guard of one Regiment, must be very observant of that belonging to another, that the whole may relieve at the same time, and every thing be performed together with the Infantry.

Art. 10. The non-commissioned Officer commanding the rear guard, after his sentries are relieved, and drawn in, makes the Men carry their carbines high in their right arms, and marches through the center street into the front of the Regiment; there makes them rest their carbines, club, face to the right and left, and march to their respective Squadrons.

N. B. Every thing must be strictly observed at the relieving, and trooping off the rear-guard, as is directed for the standard-guard; but the rear-guards are not to be marched off, till after the standard-guards.

C H A P. V.

Of posting and relieving Sentries.

Article 1.

THE standard-guard of every Regiment posts five sentries; one upon the right flank, one upon the left, one over the standards, one at the Colonel's, or commanding Officer's tent, and one over the prisoners: Of the two, who remain above the three reliefs, one is appointed a lance-corporal, to march the reliefs; and the other a calefactor, to carry reports.

N. B. The

N. B. The sentries posted over the prisoners, and the standards, stand with drawn swords, and all the others, with shouldered Carbines.

Art. 2. The rear-guard posts four sentries between the baggage and the kitchens, facing outwards, and one before the arms; the one remaining above three reliefs, is appointed a lance-corporal.

Art. 3. At the time of relieving, the Men must stand to their arms nimbly; the lance-corporal in the front of the guard, with his drawn sword in his hand, gives the word of command as follows:

Take up your Carbines!
Shoulder your Carbines!
March!

the sentries then move out, and the lance-corporal marches them off, and relieves the posts.

N. B. The sentries to be posted over the standards and prisoners are not conducted by the lance-corporal, with the rest of the relief; but march to their respective posts, and relieve themselves.

Art. 4. The lance-corporal of the standard-guard first relieves the sentry on the right flank, then the sentry on the left, and lastly the sentry at the Colonel's, or commanding Officer's tent: The lance-corporal of the rear-guard, first relieves the sentry on the right flank in the rear of the Regiment, and then the others, in successive order.

Art. 5.

Art. 5. In relieving a sentry with shouldered arms the lance-corporal gives the word of command,

Rest your Carbines!

then to the relieving sentry,

Poise your Carbine!

March!

the sentry who is to be relieved, then delivers the orders relating to his post; after the sentry, who is relieved, has fallen into the relief, and the other has taken his post, they both of their own accord come to the left-about to their proper front, carrying their carbines poised, and the lance-corporal gives the word,

Rest your Carbines!

Shoulder your Carbines!

N. B. During the relieving of a sentry, the whole relief must always stand with rested Carbines: The Lance-corporal, in giving the word of command, is to stand a little advanced upon the right flank of the relief, facing to the left, and having his drawn sword in his hand; he is to march successively from one sentry to another, and at the relieving of each, give the word of command conformably to the directions already given.

† *Art. 6.* The lance-corporal, when he returns with the relieved sentries to the guard, gives the word,

Rest

† *Art. 6.* In relieving a centry with ordered arms, the lance-corporal gives the word,

Rest your Firelocks!

at

Rest your Carbines!

Poise your Carbines!

March!

Front!

24. *Shoulder your Carbines!*

N. B. The sentries, when they have marched into the guard, and receive the foregoing word of command, *Front!* are to come to the left-about, and, in coming about, place their * left hand upon the butt-end.

When the lance-corporal returns with the relieved sentries to the guard, the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer is to receive him with shouldered arms; and after the relieved sentries have fallen in, must form and size the guard properly again.

No lance-corporals must be appointed, but such as know their duty perfectly well; particularly on separate guards.

at which the relief, together with the sentry to be relieved come to their *Rest*, as usual; at the succeeding words of command,

Poise your Firelocks!

March!

the centry delivers the orders relating to his post, after which the sentry who relieves, marches upon his post; the sentry, who is relieved, falls into the relief, faces to the left-about to his proper front, carrying his firelock poised; the lance-corporal then gives the word,

Rest your Firelocks!

Shoulder your Firelocks!

at which the relief shoulders their firelocks together, and the centry posted, orders his firelock at the usual motions. *Drag. Regul.*

* This position is described in the first motion of Explanation 2, in the Manual Exercise.

Art. 7.

Art. 7. Officers and non-commissioned Officers must be careful to give proper instructions to their sentries; in fair weather, they are always to carry their carbines shouldered, and in wet weather, secured; but whenever a General- or Field-Officer appears near their posts, they are to shoulder again, to stand steady, and with a full front towards him, and to rest as soon as he comes at the proper distance.

Art. 8. Sentries must not smoke tobacco; not move beyond the distance of ten paces from their posts, either by day or night; neither must they, on pain of running the gantlope, lay their arms out of their hands, much less sit down.

Art. 9. Sentries on the flanks of a Regiment, must not permit any person whatsoever, the Officers and Soldiers of the Regiment, and the Generals of the Army excepted, either to ride, or drive over the parade, or through the streets.

Art. 10. Sentries must challenge in time, as soon as it grows dark; must suffer no person whatsoever to go into the Regiment, and in case any one should plead business in it, must direct him to the standard-guard.

Art. 11. When armed parties, or detachments return to camp in the night, the commanding Officer must draw them up in the front, and make them form by Regiment; afterwards, when, in marching severally to their respective Regiments, they approach the standard-guard, the Officer
com-

commanding it, is to get his Men under arms ; and after his sentry has challenged, and made enquiry, to order an Officer, non-commissioned Officer, Lance-corporal, or Soldier belonging to the party to advance ; when he finds they belong to the Regiment, he must send a non-commissioned Officer with them, with orders to his sentries to let them pass.

Art. 12. The sentries belonging to the rear-guard, who are posted in the rear of the Regiment, are, in like manner, to be governed by the directions already given ; and the non-commissioned Officer commanding that guard, is moreover to be particularly careful to prevent gaming, drinking, fighting, and all manner of noise, or disturbance in the sutlers' tents after retreat-beating.

N. B. Guards, or sentries are to rest their carbines only to the rounds and patrols after retreat-beating.

After retreat-beating, the rear-guard must send out patrols amongst the sutlers, to prevent gaming and drinking, and to see also that no person conceals himself amongst the baggage, with intent to commit theft ; they are to turn out all persons drinking in the sutlers' tents, the first time they go ; but all such as they shall find there the second time, they are to take prisoners.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

What Compliments are due from guards to General- and Field-Officers, with some further Observations.

Article 1.

TO the King, all guards ought to † sound a *march*, and the Officers to salute; but as his Majesty will not have his proper honors paid to him, they are only to receive him with rested arms.

Art. 2. When the King is present in the Army, the Field-Marshal next in command, must be received with a *march*; but in his Majesty's absence, and when the principal command devolves upon him, he is to be saluted also.

N. B. When the Horse sound a Trumpet, they are not to rest their carbines, but to carry them shouldered.

Art. 3. To a General, the guards of Horse are to sound four salutes only; and those of Dragoons, to beat four ruffles; but if he commands in chief, he must be received with a *march*, and saluted by the Officers.

† — to beat a *march*, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

Art. 4.

Art. 4. To a Lieutenant-General, whether Commander in chief or not, guards of Horse are to sound three salutes, and those of Dragoons, to beat three ruffles, and to a Major-General two.

N. B. The Officers, when their guards are under arms to a General, and he makes a signal, must rest their arms, but not sound a Trumpet, or beat a Drum; when they are not yet got under arms, and a signal is made, they are only to stand by their arms, and not to take them up.

Art. 5. Standard- and rear-guards are to rest their arms to their own Colonels, or commanding Officers; to those of other Regiments, the standard-guards are to shoulder their arms, and the rear-guards to rest.

N. B. Guards are to go under arms to all Colonels, but not to any inferior Field-Officers, either of their own, or other Regiments.

Art. 6. The same honors must be paid to Generals in foreign service; when any General therefore is coming, who is not known by the guard, the commanding Officer must send a man for information.

Art. 7. A General of the Horse or Dragoons is to have two sentries on foot at his tent, and a Lieutenant- and Major-General one.

Art. 8. The guards must be very alert both night and day, and get under arms in proper time upon every occasion, otherwise the commanding Officer, or non-commissioned Officer shall be immediately relieved and confined.

Art. 9.

Art. 9. The Officer of the standard-guard, and the non-commissioned Officer of the rear-guard, must never leave their guards either by day or night; they are therefore to send for their victuals; and any Officer who absents himself for the space of half an hour from his guard, shall be confined a year in a fortress, and his pay deducted for the invalid fund.

Art. 10. The Officer of the standard-guard must make his report to the Colonel, or commanding Officer of the Regiment, before the * *call* is sounded; and any orders which he may then receive, he is to give to his guard, and to the non-commissioned Officer also of the rear-guard; he is in like manner to make a second report, after he has trooped off, and dismissed his guard.

Art. 11. To the end that no Officer may ever presume to absent himself from his guard, or be able to advance any pretence whatsoever for so doing, he is no longer to make his report to the commanding Officer before he is relieved, but to send a non-commissioned Officer from his guard with it to the Adjutant, who is afterwards to give it to the commanding Officer.

N. B. When an Officer has occasion to ease himself in the day-time, he must procure one of his brother-Officers to take the command of the guard during his absence, for when a standard-guard is to be under arms, the Officer must, on no account, be wanting.

* See above Art. 2. p. 164.

Art. 12. The Officer of the standard-guard is not to carry the *parole* to the Colonel, or Commandant of the Regiment after retreat-beating, but the Major is to visit his and the rear-guard, and to receive it from him, and from the non-commissioned Officer of the rear-guard, together with all such further orders as were given relating to their guards; and whatever he finds defective, he is to make report of to the Colonel, or commanding Officer of the Regiment.

Art. 13. The Officer of the standard-guard commands the rear-guard; the non-commissioned Officer therefore of the rear-guard is to make his report to him evening and morning, and after he is dismounted likewise.

Art. 14. No Officer on a standard-guard shall fend for a mattress, or night-gown, but shall keep on his entire mounting during the time he continues on duty.

Art. 15. No Soldier shall absent himself from his guard without leave; and only one man at a time be permitted to go from either guard; but the non-commissioned Officer and Trumpeter are never to be absent.

Art. 16. The Calefactor is appointed, to make report of all Soldiers confined, released, or punished, to the Colonel, or commanding Officer of the Regiment, to all the Field-Officers, to the Captains of the Troops to which such men belong, and to the Adjutants.

N. B. When

N. B. When a Trooper, or Dragoon reports any thing to an Officer, he is to do it with his arms shouldered, and afterwards to rest, and continue in that position till he is dismissed, after which he is to shoulder again.

Sensible and good Men are such only as must be appointed to carry reports.

Art. 17. † *To boot and saddle* must be sounded as soon as it is light enough to read writing, and the Infantry beat the *reveille*.

Art. 18. All Officers and non-commissioned Officers, who are off duty, must appear upon the parade at guard mounting, and remain there during the mounting and dismounting of the guards.

CHAP. VII.

Of General-Officers' Guards, and orderly Duties.

Article 1.

THE strength of the King's guard depends upon his own orders, and it is composed of his own guards.

Art. 2. The Field-Marshal's guard, who commands in chief, whether the King is present with the Army, or not, is the same as is appointed in the *Regulations* for the Infantry.

† *Art. 17.* The *reveille*, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

M 2

Art. 3.

Art 3. A General of the Horse or Dragoons, when the King is present with the Army, has

One Cornet, one non-commissioned Officer, and twelve private Men on foot;

but when he commands in chief,

One Lieutenant, two non-commissioned Officers, and thirty Men.

Art 4. A Lieutenant-General's guard, whether in the King's presence or not, consists of

One non-commissioned Officer, and eight Men;

and a Major-General's, whether he commands in chief, or not, of

One non-commissioned Officer, and six Men.

N. B. Lieutenant- and Major-Generals' guards are to be furnished by their respective brigades.

Art. 5. The General-Officers' guards assemble at the head of their brigades, as soon as the standard-guards are mounted, and the Officers, or non-commissioned Officers who command them, march them through the intervals of the Regiments, the nearest way to their posts, where they draw them up opposite to the old guards, and make them rest their arms; they are then to receive all the orders relating to their posts, from the Officers commanding the old guards, after which they make them shoulder again, face to the right, march by files, and take up the ground on which the old guards stood, in doing which they are to form in a single rank, and the sentries for the relief are to fall out: They then stand shouldered,

dered, till the old guards are marched off, after which they rest, order, and ground their arms.

N. B. All General Officers' guards are to be posted on the right of their Generals' tents, and facing the line of the Army.

Art. 6. The Officers, or non-commissioned Officers commanding the old guards, form them two or three deep, in marching them off their ground, and then stand fast opposite to the right flank of the new ones, till all the sentries are relieved, and fallen in; after which they make them rest, and carry their arms high in their right arms, in which position they are to march them through the intervals into the front of their brigades, where they make them rest, club, face to the right and left, and march to their respective Regiments.

Art 7. Every Regiment of Horse or Dragoons, sends an orderly Cornet to the King, who is to remain constantly at head quarters; Cornets are to do no other duty, but that of mounting standard-guards, and going orderly.

The orderly Officers are to be relieved every morning.

In the King's absence, the orderly Officers are to attend the General, who commands in chief.

N. B. No Troopers, Dragoons, or non-commissioned Officers must be sent orderly, but, in their stead, every Regiment of Hussars sends a Man, who, together with some of the Hunters also, is to remain constantly at head quarters.

Art. 8. Generals are not to have orderly Officers, but the King allows to Field-Marsahls and

Generals two Aid-de-camps, and to Lieutenant- and Major-Generals, one.

CHAP. VIII.

Method of giving out the Parole.

Article 1.

IN a standing camp, the Parole is to be given out at head-quarters at eleven o'clock, at which time the Generals and Colonels of the day, the Majors of all Regiments, the Brigade-Majors, the Aid-de-camps from General-Officers, together with the non-commissioned Officers and Lance-corporals belonging to the Generals' guards, must take care to be at hand; but when the Army is on a march, the Parole time must be always given out in orders, at which a Major is to be detached from every column, who receives the Parole, and gives it to those Regiments which compose it.

Art. 2. His Majesty gives the Parole to the Major-General of the day, who must take down all orders in writing exactly, and inquire his Majesty's pleasure, concerning all such particulars, as have been reported to him by any Regiments; the Parole, and the orders he is afterwards to give to the Field-Marsals.

N. B. The Major-General of the day, after he has taken down the orders in writing, must read them carefully over, to prevent mistakes.

Art. 3.

Art. 3. The Major-General of the day gives out the Parole in the front of the King's guard, to the Majors of the day, who are drawn up according to seniority of Regiment, to the Brigade-Majors, and to the Aid-de-camps from General-Officers, at which time the guard is to go under arms, and to rest their carbines, or firelocks; afterwards to shoulder again, and to remain in that position, till the Major-General has done.

N. B. Eight sentries are to be posted with rested arms upon the flanks, while the Parole is giving out.

No Volontier, who is not effective in the King's service, shall be permitted to approach within hearing of the Parole, and the orders, for which the General of the day shall be responsible.

Art. 4. The Brigade-Major of the day is to give the Parole, and the orders to the Majors of the detail of General-Officers' guards, and out-parties.

N. B. After the Parole is given out, all the Aid-de-camps bring it to their respective Generals, together with the orders; they are also to give it to the non-commissioned Officers of their Generals' guards, together with all such orders as may pertain to them.

Art. 5. After the Parole is given out, the Majors ride to their Regiments, and give it, together with the orders, to their respective Colonels and Commandants; after which every Major is to take down in writing any other orders his Colonel may think proper to give relating to the Regiment.

Art. 6. The Major of the day gives out the Parole to the Adjutants and Quarter-masters of the Regiment, an hour before the *retreat* is sounded, in the front of the Standards; the standard-guard goes under arms, and the same ceremony is to be observed, as is already directed, when the Parole is given out at head-quarters; the Adjutants afterwards bring it to the Field-Officers, and the Quarter-masters to the Captains and Subaltern-Officers of their respective Squadrons.

The two commanding Officers of the grand-guard detached from each wing of the Army, are to send each an Officer to the King's head-quarters for the Parole, which they afterwards give out, together with a counter-sign, to every guard depending upon them, which guards are to send a non-commissioned Officer to receive it.

N. B. The picquets are also to send an Officer to head-quarters for the Parole.

Art. 7. The Majors, when their Regiments are to exercise the following day, and when they have any executions, burials, or other particulars necessary to be laid before the King, must report the same to the Major-General of the day, half an hour before the Parole is to be given out, that he, having reported them to the King, when he received the Parole, may acquaint them with his Majesty's answer.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Picquet-guard, together with some Directions to be observed after the Retreat.

† *Article 1.*

EVERY Regiment of Horse furnishes one Subaltern-Officer, two non-commissioned Officers, and two Men per Troop for the Picquet, and each wing, one Captain, and one Trumpeter.

Art. 2. All the Picquets are to assemble on the right wing in the front of the first line at seven in the morning, to which place they are to be marched by their respective Officers; after the whole Picquet is formed, it is to march, as usual, with drawn swords, and without || sound of trumpet, and draw up on the left of the old Picquet; when the old Picquet is relieved, it marches off with drawn swords, and without || sound of trumpet, after which the new Picquet takes up the ground on which the old one stood, the Men dismount, unbridle the horses, and link them to the Picquets.

† *Art. 1.* Every Regiment of Dragoons furnishes one Subaltern-Officer, two non-commissioned Officers, and four Men per Squadron for the Picquet; and each wing, one Captain, and one Drummer.

|| —without beat of drum, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

N. B. One

N. B. One sentry on foot is to be posted on each flank.

The old Picquet must draw swords, when the new comes at the distance of about hundred paces, and after it is relieved, and marched off, must return them, and the Men march to their respective Regiments, where their Officers are to make them go to the right-about by fours, and move to their tents.

Art. 3. Picquet-guards are not to be ordered, but when the Commander in chief finds them necessary, on which occasions they must parade at the place appointed by his order.

Art. 4. The whole Cavalry are to furnish one Colonel, one Lieutenant-Colonel, and one Major for the Picquet, who, when they go their rounds, must always visit the Picquet, to see if it be alert; and no Officer, non-commissioned Officer, or private Man belonging to it, is to take off his cuirass, or sword, much less pull off his boots, but must always keep on all his clothes and accoutrements, and continue as alert as possible, that, in case of any alarm, they may be in readiness to mount immediately, and march without loss of time wherever it may be necessary.

N. B. When the Field-Officers visit the Picquet in the night, the Men are to draw up by their horses. — The Major of the Picquet is to remain constantly with it, both by day and night, and may have a small tent pitched for himself; the other Field-Officers belonging to the Picquet, are always to wear their sashes, to keep on their entire Regimentals, and in case any alarm happens in the night, to repair instantly to their post; in like manner, when the Picquet is paraded and relieved, all the Field-Officers are required to be present.

When

When the King himself, or any Prince is riding out, the Picquet is not required either to mount, to draw up by their horses, or to take any notice of them.

Art. 5. The Colonel of the Picquet is to go the grand rounds in both lines; the Lieutenant-Colonel the day-rounds in both lines; and the Major the visiting-rounds in both lines.

N. B. The Field-Officers, when they go their rounds, must dismount to receive the Parole, and the guards are to acknowledge no Officer's rounds, till he has dismounted.

Art. 6. In the evening at sun-set, the artillery fires a cannon, upon which all the † Trumpeters of the Cavalry sound the *retreat*, they must therefore be in readiness at the standard-guard.

Art. 7. Subaltern-Officers are not to be out of their Regiments after the *retreat*, nor to game, or make any noise in the sutlers' tents, for which the commanding Officer of the standard-guard shall be responsible.

Art. 8. There shall be no firing in the Army after the *retreat*, and any private Man offending herein, shall run the gantlope thirty times; neither shall the loaded pieces be at any time fired off, but always drawn if possible; and a report of all such as cannot be drawn, must be made to the Major at orderly time, after which a non-commissioned

† — the Drummers of the Cavalry beat the *retreat*, &c.
Drag. Regul.

Officer

Officer will be ordered out upon the occasion, who is to assemble the men belonging to them between the hours of eleven and twelve, at which time they are to fire them off together, always taking care to present their pieces in the air.

Art. 9. After the *retreat*, the rolls are to be called over by the non-commissioned Officers, who are afterwards to make their reports to their Captains, to the Subaltern-Officers of their respective Troops, or Squadrons, and to the Adjutant; and the Adjutant reports to the Field-Officers.

N. B. No Soldier is to leave his Troop, or Squadron, after roll-calling; and as soon as it is dark, the Men must lie down to sleep; but when the Army is to march the day following, they are to lie down immediately after the *retreat*; and there must be no drinking, or noise in the Troops, or Squadrons, much less amongst the fustlers.

CHAP. X.

Duty of the Generals of the day, and of Brigade-Generals, and the method of giving in the returns.

Article 1.

THE Generals of the day shall visit all the advanced posts and guards every morning, and make a report to his Majesty, or in his absence, to the General who commands in chief, of the

the behaviour of the Officers upon them, and whether they found every thing in proper order.

Art. 2. The Generals of the day must remain always in camp, and are never to ride out, without leaving word which way they are gone, that they may be always found, when wanted.

Art. 3. The Generals of the day are to attend the parading of all parties and detachments from the Army, in order to see that every thing is performed in a regular manner, that the Men are assembled at the time appointed, that every Regiment furnishes the proportion, specified in the detail the evening before, in complete order, and that the whole are afterwards formed, and told off properly by the Brigade-Major of the day.

N. B. When large detachments are made, and to be posted at any considerable distance from the Army, or to remain out for any time, a detail of them must be given out at orderly time the day before, and every thing performed according to the directions before given.

Art. 4. The Generals of the day must take care to give proper instructions to all Officers, who are sent on command out of camp, in regard to their conduct both upon the march, and upon their posts; as also concerning the time and manner of their being relieved, and of marching back again.

Art. 5. The commanding Officers of grand-guards, or detachments, at their return to camp, are to make their report to the General of the day.

Art. 6.

Art. 6. Any Field-Officer who is ordered on party, must, at his return, make his report to his Majesty; a Captain, on the contrary, when he goes on command, as he receives his instructions from the General of the day, who attends the parading of it, must report to him consequently when he returns.

N. B. The returns of all parties must be reported to the Brigade-Major of the day.

Art. 7. Every thing of consequence which happens in any Regiment in the Army, on any advanced post, or guard, must be reported to the General of the day, who is afterwards to report it to his Majesty, or, in his absence, to the Commander in chief.

Art. 8. The Generals of the day must be answerable, that all orders given the day before at orderly time, or afterwards, are performed with the utmost punctuality: They are to go along the lines frequently in the day-time, and the Adjutants; as they pass, must appear in the front of their respective Regiments, in readiness to receive any orders from them.

Art. 9. When Regiments have any sick men to send to the hospital, they are to give in a return of them, together with the numbers wanting to complete, to the Major-General of the day, who is afterwards to send it to the Surgeon-General in the morning before guard-mounting.

Art. 10. A Return shall be given in to the Brigade Major of the day, every morning before guard-

guard-mounting, of all extraordinaries, specifying also the numbers of men and horses wanting to complete in each Regiment, which must afterwards be made into one general return, and given in to the General of the day.

Art. 11. The Generals of the day, when any alarm happens in the night, shall repair immediately to the place, and if they find it necessary, order the Picquet to march thither.

Art. 12. All Generals commanding Brigades, must be responsible for them, they are therefore required to be always present when the guards mount, the picquet turns out, or when any detachments are to march, which are furnished by their respective Brigades, in order to see that every thing is performed in a regular manner.

Art. 13. The Generals of Brigades must be present when any Regiments, which belong to them, are at exercise: The Major-Generals shall visit them every morning, and be answerable that every species of duty is performed with the utmost exactness and application; that no irregularities whatsoever are committed, either by Officers, non-commissioned Officers, or private Men, but that every person is strictly attentive to the discharge of his duty, and the camp perpetually preserved in proper condition.

Art. 14. No Officer shall be permitted to absent himself from camp above four hours, without the knowledge of his Brigade-General; neither
is

is any Regiment to fend for straw upon occasion, without having first acquainted him with it.

Art. 15. The daily returns shall be sent in to the King's Adjutant-General at seven in the morning; and when the Army marches, immediately after its arrival in camp; and the commanding Officers of Regiments, whose returns are imperfect, shall pay thirty ducats to the invalid fund.

Art. 16. The bread-returns shall be given in every five days, and the Majors must take care that the bread be good, and thoroughly baked, and when it proves otherwise, shall make report thereof to the Commissary-General.

CHAP. XI.

Of the performance of Divine Service in the Army.

Article 1.

PRAYERS must be read twice a day; immediately after guard-mounting in the morning, and at six in the evening.

Art. 2. When the Drummers of the Infantry beat the signal at prayer-time, the † Trumpeter

† — the Drummer belonging to the standard-guard of the Regiment encamped upon the right, must also beat the signal, to whom those of all the other guards are to be attentive, and immediately to do the same, that the whole may beat together. *Drag. Regul.*

belonging

belonging to the standard-guard of the Regiment encamped next to it must sound the *Call*, to whom those of all the other guards are to be attentive, and immediately to do the same, that the whole may sound together.

N. B. The Trumpeters upon this occasion are to sound, and the Kettle-Drummers to beat in the front of their respective Standard-guards.

Art. 3. At the *Call* to prayers, the troops or squadrons are to be drawn up on the parade, and the Rolls called, after which every Captain makes the rear ranks of his Troop or Squadron close to the front, and the Major gives the word of command as follows.

Face to the right and left !

March !

Halt !

Front !

From the right and left wheel inwards, and form the circle !

March !

N. B. The Officers are to stand at equal distances in the front of their Troops, or Squadrons, and the non-commissioned Officers in their rear.

Art. 4. When the Regiment has formed the circle, prayers are to be read, and all the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men, who are not on duty, must attend.

N. B. The Men are not required to dress themselves completely for prayers.

N

Art.

Art. 5. When prayers are over, the Major gives the word of command,

To the right about! March!

After which the Troops or Squadrons break, and march to their respective streets.

N. B. The Standard-guard is not to go under arms, when the Regiment marches out to prayers. No service, singing and all included, shall be allowed to continue above a quarter of an hour; and as often as the Chaplain exceeds that time, for which the Adjutant is to be answerable, he shall forfeit one rixdollar to the invalid-fund.

Art. 6. On Sundays, at nine o'clock, a sermon is to be preached, and the service may last an hour: in a Standing Camp, the communion shall be administered every fourteen days.

CHAP. XII.

General Directions to be observed when the Line turns out.

Article 1.

THE army is never to turn out, when his Majesty comes along the lines, without previous orders; and when such orders are given, the Troops or Squadrons must be put into proper order, the Captains are therefore to review them in time for that purpose.

Art.

Art. 2. When the line is to turn out, no Officer, non-commissioned Officer, or Soldier, who is not on duty, shall be absent, the rolls must, therefore, be called before-hand.

Art. 3. The Troops, or Squadrons, are to be drawn up three deep, and in close order; the front-rank upon the non-commissioned Officers line, and the non-commissioned Officers posted to the divisions.

Art. 4. The Officers draw up at the head of the standards; the Colonel advanced before; behind the Colonel, the Field-Officers; and behind them, all the other Officers in a rank entire, according to seniority.

N. B. The Officers must always wear their sashes in the army, and in all places where a Prussian camp is pitched, or any considerable body of troops assembled.

The Trumpeters, or Drummers, take post upon the right and left of the standards.

C H A P. XIII.

Of exercising the Troops.

Article 1.

REGIMENTS are to be completed, and put into the best order, before they take the field; when they are assembled therefore in the spring, they must be diligently exercised.

In the army, the Men shall ride every day, unless when they have come off a march, after which the Horses must be allowed to rest ; in a Standing-Camp, they must be exercised by Squadrons, at least every other day; and the King, or Commander in chief, will sometimes take out the whole Cavalry, or a Wing, at once: single Regiments must likewise be unexpectedly ordered, every now and then, to saddle, and to move out with all expedition, in order to keep the Men constantly alert, and render it habitual to them to be in readiness to march upon the least notice.

Art. 2. Cuirassiers are never to exercise on foot in the army, the Recruits excepted, who must always be disciplined first on foot.

The Trumpeters and Drummers of the Cavalry are to practise at the same time with the Drummers of the Infantry.

C H A P. XIV.

How Officers and Soldiers are to apply
for leave of Absence.

Article 1.

WHEN a Field-Officer is desirous to go out of camp, he is to make application to the General of the Day, and to the Lieutenant and Major-General of his Brigade; the Colonel, or commanding Officer of a Regiment, can give permission

mission to any inferior Officer, at his request, to absent himself four hours.

Art. 2: When any Officer asks leave to stay a night out of camp, which no Officer shall presume to do without permission, the Colonel of the Regiment must apply to his Majesty, or, in his absence, to the Commander in chief.

Art. 3. The private Men must be suffered to go out of camp as little as possible; and such as require Leave to go to any neighbouring village, in order to purchase necessaries, shall be sent under the care of non-commissioned Officers, who are to bring them back to camp again.

N. B. The non-commissioned Officers detached from camp upon these occasions, must not be absent above the space of six hours at most; and are also to be answerable that none of the men get drunk, or commit any irregularities.

Art. 4. No Officer, non-commissioned Officer, or Soldier, shall leave the camp without permission; any private Man who disobeys this order, shall run the gantlope through 200 men.

Art. 5. Every private foldier, who is found beyond the advanced posts, shall be taken up, and hanged as a deserter; neither must any Officer presume to go beyond the advanced posts without leave.

C H A P. XV.

Of Foraging Parties.

Article 1.

WHEN the Cavalry are to forage, they must do it by a Wing, or at least a Brigade, at a time; no single Regiments therefore, or Officers, shall be suffered to forage for themselves alone, particularly when they will be obliged to send beyond the advanced posts.

Art. 2. The day, or at least the night before any forage, a strong covering party must be ordered out, sufficient for the security of the foragers, the commanding Officer of which must dispose the posts in such a manner, as entirely to cover the ground situated towards the enemy, nor shall any of the foragers be permitted to pass them: after the proper disposition has been made, the Quarter-Master-General must reconnoitre well the ground, and assign to every Regiment a limited portion; or, when the forage is supplied out of barns, a particular village, and five Quarter-Masters from every Regiment are to attend upon him, who are afterwards to conduct their respective Regiments to the places severally appointed for them.

N. B. The Officer commanding the covering party, as soon as he has made his disposition, must send an Officer to camp, to conduct the foragers the nearest way to the place.

Ar

Art. 3. When the army marches into a new camp, the forage happening to be upon the ground whereon any Regiment encamps, is to become the sole property of that Regiment, nor shall one Regiment do any detriment to another in this respect.

Art. 4. Every Brigade shall furnish a party, and every Regiment another separate one likewise, with † one or two Officers per Troop, proportioned to circumstances, and the number of foragers, who are to keep the foragers in proper order, taking care that those of one Regiment don't mix with those of another; to prevent which, when they march out of camp, one Officer is to be posted in the front of every Troop or Squadron, and another in the rear.

N. B. Besides the Officers demanded from every Troop or Squadron, each Regiment is also to furnish one or two Captains, and a Field-Officer, that the foragers may be kept in still better order.

Art. 5. When the foragers arrive at the place appointed to forage in, every Regiment is to take possession of, and to confine itself within the ground respectively allotted it, nor shall any Soldier, or Servant, presume of his own accord, and without orders from an Officer, to quit his own Troop or Squadron, and forage elsewhere.

Art. 6. The Officers of every Regiment must take care that no person forages beyond the posts, and if, notwithstanding all orders to the contrary,

N 4 any

† With two or three Officers per Squadron, &c. *Drag. Regus.*

any Soldier, or Servant, shall be guilty of this offence, they must report him to the Regiment, in order to have him punished in an exemplary manner; because from such disorders it happens, that so many horses are carried off by the enemy, to the great detriment of the Regiments they belonged to.

N. B. The separate parties furnished both by every Brigade, as well as every Regiment, are to take all possible pains to keep their respective foragers together, and to prevent their marauding, or passing their bounds; they must therefore form a chain of sentries round about them, and continue in that disposition, till the foraging is over.

Art. 7. When any alarm happens during the foraging, and there is a prospect of danger, the foragers are to quit their forage, and retire to camp.

N. B. As soon as a Regiment has done foraging, and is ready, it is to be marched back in good order to camp, the Officers of every Troop or Squadron being posted, one in the front, and one in the rear, as is before directed; its separate party is likewise to march in the rear, but the brigade-parties are to remain in their posts, till all their respective Regiments have done foraging.

Art. 8. The Officers, when out upon foraging parties, either in the field, or in villages, must always march their men in a regular manner to the places in which they are to forage; and after the foraging is over, they must draw them up, have the Roll called, and march them back in the same good order to camp. Every Officer ordered out on these parties, shall be answerable that he

he brings all his Men back to the Regiment, he must therefore take his precautions accordingly.

C H A P. XVI.

Of Grand-Guards, Out-Posts, and Parties.

Article 1.

Grand-Guards are not to be posted above five or six hundred paces from the army, and the number they are to be composed of, must depend on the strength of the Cavalry, and the contiguity of the enemy: the videts are to be planted double on every post, that when they discover any thing extraordinary, one of them can march to give intelligence of it to the guard, but the other must remain at his post.

Art. 2. The guard-house for a Grand guard must, if possible, be situated in some hollow ground, or covered place, to prevent the enemy from forming a true judgment of the numbers it consists of; but the Videts are to be posted upon eminencies, to be able to distinguish objects at a great distance; at the same time it is proper to observe, that a Guard, or Videt, must never be stationed too near a wood, where they might be surpris'd and carried off by the enemy.

Art.

Art. 3. Grand-guards are always to be drawn up in two ranks, and the first care of an Officer, who has any ambition in him, must be, to acquire intelligence of the enemy, in regard to their situation, the road which leads to them, and the part from whence he has most reason to expect an assault; after which he will be better able to dispose his Men: the intent of these guards is to oppose the enemy upon any attack, and gain time for a large body to assemble, and one that is sufficient to make a vigorous defence: the commanding Officer of a Grand-guard, as soon as there appears any danger of being attacked, must send intelligence of it to the General who commands in chief, that he may make his disposition accordingly.

Art. 4. His Majesty hopes, that the Officers of the cavalry, as they have very distinct instructions, in regard to the manner of posting Grand-guards, will be more diligent in the execution of that part of their duty, than, to their shame, they have hitherto been: he therefore strictly charges them, carefully to examine the seat of a war, and, by consulting proper maps, acquire an exact knowledge of the country: they are likewise always to post their Videts facing towards the enemy.

Art. 5. All parties detached from the Army, are to be told off a hundred ways, on which account they must be always composed of equal numbers.

Art. 6. The Grand-guards of each wing are to assemble at the head of the first Regiment in the front

front of the first line, and to be relieved every twenty-four hours : the Brigade-Major forms them, and tells them off, posts the Officers and non-commissioned Officers, and gives them all the necessary instructions in regard to their behaviour.

Art. 7. When the Grand-guards, Out-posts, or Parties are formed, the Brigade-Major gives the word of command, as follows,

Officers and non-commissioned Officers march forwards !

upon which the Officers draw up in a single rank, and in their rear the non-commissioned Officers in two ranks.

N. B. The Grand-guards are to parade at five o'clock in the morning, when the season of the year permits ; but at other times, as soon as it is light ; the Out-posts and Parties, a detail of which is to be given in the evening before at orderly time, are to parade upon the right, or left-wing, or in the center of the army, as is most convenient.

The Adjutants are to deliver the Men, to be furnished by their respective regiments for Grand-guards, Out-posts, and Parties, to the Brigade-Major at the place of parade.

Art. 8. After the Grand-guards, Out-posts, and Parties are told off, and the Officers and non-commissioned Officers appointed, the Brigade-Major gives the word,

Officers and non-commissioned Officers march to your posts !

Upon

Upon which the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and Trumpeters or Drummers, move to their posts, where the Officers must examine whether they have their proper complement of men, after which they are to draw up at the head of their respective divisions, when the commanding Officer of the Grand-guard gives the word,

Draw your swords!

Center and rear-ranks, move forward to close order!

March!

To the right wheel by divisions!

March!

Upon which every Officer is to step off together with his division.

N. B. † The Grand-guards of Horse, or Dragoons, continue sounding or beating a *march*, till they have marched clear of the camp, after which the Trumpeters or Drummers are ordered to cease, and the Men to return their swords; afterwards, when the Officer approaches within about the distance of one hundred paces from the old guard, he makes his men draw their swords again, upon which the trumpets are to sound, or drums to beat.

All other Out-posts and Parties are to march out of camp with swords drawn, but without sound of Trumpet, or beat of Drum, and to return their swords, as soon as they have marched clear of the camp.

Art.

† Altered by an appendix to these *Regulations*, that the Grand-guards are to march out of camp with swords drawn, but without sound of trumpet, or beat of drum; neither are they to sound or beat a *march* when they approach the old guard, as before was the custom.

Art. 9. The new guard draws up on the left of the old one, after which the Officers of both guards deliver to each other reciprocally all orders and instructions.

N. B. When the new guard draw their swords, and sound their Trumpet, or beat their Drum, the old guard must do the same.

Art. 10. When the Officer of the old guard has delivered all the orders relating to his guard, the relief turns out, and after his sentries are relieved, and fallen in, he marches off with swords drawn, and † sound of trumpet, to the place of parade, on which his Guard was formed the day before, when they are to be drawn up by Regiment, and afterwards marched by their respective non commissioned Officers, or Lance-Corporals, to their several Regiments.

N. B. When the Officer of the old guard is marched off about one hundred paces from the new one, he is to make his guard return their swords, and from thence to march without † sound of Trumpet, to the place of parade.

The commanding Officer of the Grand-guard, after he is relieved, and arrived in camp, is to make his report to the General of the day; and all the subordinate Officers, who were on the same guard, are to report their return to the Field Officers of their respective Regiments.

Art. 11. As soon as the old guard has marched off, the new one takes up its ground, and the commanding Officer may order either the whole, half, or fourth part of it to dismount, according

as

† — beat of drum, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

as he is more or less apprehensive of danger from the situation of the enemy.

Art. 12. When Out-posts, or Parties are relieved, and return to camp, they are to march without † sound of Trumpet to the place of parade, whether it be on the right, or left wing, or in the center of the infantry; neither must they draw their swords, unless they consist of 200 men, or upwards, in which case they are then to do it.

N. B. The commanding Officer, as soon as his party has marched up to their ground, is to form them by Regiment.

Art. 13. As soon as the party has formed by Regiment, every Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, respectively, orders his men to close their rear ranks to the front, and marches them to his Regiment: when they have taken up their ground on the parade, he faces them to the right about, and then dismisses them, after which he makes his report to the commanding Officer.

CHAP.

† — beat of drum, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

C H A P. XVII.

Directions for the Conduct of Officers
on Grand-Guards, Out-Posts, and
Parties, in Case of an Attack.

Article 1.

WHEN a commanding Officer perceives that the enemy will attack his guard, he must himself sally out upon them, provided they are not too strong for him, when they are at the distance of about 100 paces; but if their numbers are much superior, he must retire before they approach so near.

Art. 2. Every Officer, as soon as he has relieved the old guard, and posted his sentries, is to visit them all round, to see whether they cover the ground sufficiently, or not, and if he thinks any part is too open and exposed, he is at liberty to plant new sentries there; but he must not remove, or alter any of the old posts, because they were appointed by the Generals: the commanding Officer of the whole is himself likewise to visit all the inferior guards depending upon him, and all possible precautions must be taken, to prevent the enemy from surprizing any post.

N. B. The Videts are to carry their arms advanced before them, with the buts planted on the right knee.

Art.

Art. 3. When a Guard discovers any body of the enemy in motion, an Officer must be immediately detached with the intelligence to the General of the day, particularizing as much as possible their numbers, and every other material circumstance: if afterwards they should approach very near the guard, the commanding Officer must retreat slowly, and in good order, towards the camp.

Art. 4. If any General-Officers come to visit the Grand-guard, whether they be of the Cavalry or Infantry, and whether Generals, Lieutenant-Generals, or Major-Generals, the commanding Officer must receive them with his Guard mounted, and swords drawn; but he is not to † sound a *march*, not even to the commander in chief himself, because that is never to be done but at the relief of the guard.

When an Officer at the head of his guard or party, meets any General, he is to pay him no other respect, than in taking care that his Men march by with their ranks and files in proper order; when Officers likewise are ordered to escort prisoners to any fortress, or other place, they are neither to § sound a Trumpet, nor to draw their Swords, during the whole command.

Art. 5. The Grand-guard may be suffered to dismount in the day-time, but is to remain drawn up || three deep, nor must any Officer, as his reputation

† — to beat a *march*, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

§ — to beat a drum, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

|| — two deep, nor must any officer take off his sword, pull off his boots, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

putation and honour are at stake, take off his cuirass, pull off his boots, or have a chair to sleep in, but must keep on all his clothes and accoutrements, together with the non-commissioned Officers and Men, both day and night, nor presume to sleep as long as he continues on the guard.

Art. 6. All inferior posts, detached from the Grand-guard, and commanded by non-commissioned Officers, or Subalterns, depend upon the commanding Officer of the Grand-guard, and are to make their reports to him, and to receive the parole from him.

Art. 7. An hour before night, the commanding Officer of the Grand-guard is to give out the parole to all the Officers depending upon his guard, together with a counter-sign, or signal, that when the posts are visited in the night-time, they may be able to distinguish with certainty their own rounds, and the enemy be prevented from imposing upon them.

Art. 8. As soon as it is dark, all posts belonging to the Grand-guard are to mount their horses, and to continue on horseback during the whole night, particularly where there is any probability of being attempted by the Enemy; but at other times in a camp, when there is no reason to be apprehensive of any danger, one half only of the guard must constantly remain mounted, and the other keep their horses bridled, and stand by them.

O

N. B. They

N. B. They are to mount by Halves alternately, and to be relieved at regular hours.

Art. 9. Every Officer must be careful to give proper instructions to his sentries, and must often patrol himself, as well as send out patrols, to see whether they be alert and watchful on their posts; a non-commissioned Officer, with a small party, must be also frequently detached, to reconnoitre the intermediate country between them and the enemy, in order to prevent any sentry, or small guard, from being surpris'd: when the non-commissioned Officer returns, the advanced sentries are not to suffer him to pass, till another non-commissioned Officer, with a few Men is sent to him from the guard, who is to demand the parole from him with his pistol in hand, and when he finds it right, he is then to take him to the commanding Officer, that he may make his report to him.

N. B. The commanding Officer of the Grand-guard whenever any alarm happens, is immediately to send an Officer, with some Men to the place, to gain information of the particulars.

Art. 10. The sentries are to challenge in proper time, and to demand the counter-sign before they permit any one to approach within the distance of fifty paces; nor must they on any account suffer persons to pass, till they become perfectly well convinced, that they don't belong to the Enemy.

Art. 11. The sentries, when they have challenged any person, but receive no answer, are im-

immediately to demand the counter-sign; and if they still receive no answer, they are directly to fire; for which reason, the Officers are to examine the arms of every relief, whether they are in proper order, well primed, and the powder dry; and also whether the hammer-stalls be taken off.

Art. 12. The Officers must inform their sentries that whenever they perceive more than two men with arms, whether on horseback, or on foot, advancing towards them, notwithstanding they can give the counter-sign, they are not, after they have first challenged, to suffer them to advance one pace further, but must give the word to the next sentry, who is to pass it to the guard; the commanding Officer is then to send a good non-commission'd Officer with a party of men, to make examination; if the non-commission'd Officer finds it to be a detachment from the army, he must order it to stand fast, and is then to return with the Officer commanding it, to the Officer of his guard, who, in case he be unacquainted with his person, and is afraid to confide either in his clothing, or his knowledge of the counter-sign, must scrutinize him strictly, require his orders and pass-ports, and, when he finds them authentic, must permit his command to pass.

N. B. When they happen to be a few men only, the non-commission'd Officer must bring them to the guard, where the Officer, in case he has no personal knowledge of them, must detain them all night, nor dismiss them before day light.

If in the day-time likewise any body of men should approach an Officer's guard, who give out that they are friends, he is nevertheless not to depend upon them, nor to suffer them to advance too near, unless he has a personal knowledge of the Officers, even in which case he is not to let his guard dismount again, till they have marched by.

Art. 13. All Officers, when on out-posts or other parties out of camp, must take the same precautions, that whenever they shall happen to be attacked by the enemy, they may have their men mounted, and in readiness to receive them, nor remain at any time exposed even to a possibility of being surpris'd; every Officer therefore must keep his men always together, must take care that not one can find any opportunity to steal away to maraude, or otherwise to quit his guard; and likewise post his sentries round about in such a manner, as to render it impossible for any thing to escape their observation either by day or night.

Art. 14. When an Officer commands an out-post, it is highly necessary that he should become a Judge of the ground; he must therefore make himself perfectly well acquainted with the country round about him, so as to be able to know, from what part the enemy can best make an attack upon him; after which he can post himself in such a manner as to frustrate at least any such attempt, if not render it altogether impracticable; the disposition here meant by his Majesty, is when an Officer posts himself behind a defile, bridge, hollow way, or bank, because that when
he

he presents his guard drawn up in good order in a situation so advantageous, he may rest assured no enemy will venture to pass; an eminence is also another defensible post for a body of cavalry, where there is a valley lying before it, and the flanks can be well covered, for it is a very essential precaution for Officers in all situations to render, as much as possible, their flanks and rear secure: when an Officer, posted in such a manner, discovers the approach of any party, he must immediately mount his guard, and detach a Corporal and two men, with their arms advanced, to reconnoitre them, who are to fire in case they find them enemies, and afterwards retire to their post with the utmost speed.

Art. 15. When an Officer, notwithstanding his utmost vigilance and precaution, is attacked on his post, he shall not abandon it, without having first made all possible resistance; nor retire, unless compelled thereto by absolute necessity; namely, the being overpowered by numbers, without any probability of receiving succours, the reality of which he is moreover, on an enquiry, to produce sufficient proof of: if, on the contrary, it shall in the least degree appear, that he might either have maintained his post, or made a better defence; or, that he did not behave, in every respect, as became a prudent and brave Officer, he shall be cashiered with infamy, and, according to the nature of his offence, be punished with death, and forfeiture of his effects.

Art. 16. When an Officer is detached with a command to any considerable distance from the army, where it will be impossible for him to receive any reinforcement, and perceives a much stronger body of the enemy advancing towards him, he is to make his retreat in good time, and march back the safest way, through woods, villages, or defiles, to the Army.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Manner of cantoning a Regiment on a March, and of posting the necessary Guards for its Security.

Article 1.

WHEN a single Regiment is on its march, it must always have an advanced guard, consisting of a Lieutenant, 2 non-commissioned Officers and 40 men, which in a champaign country, may march as far as 500 paces in front, but where it is interspersed with woods or defiles, they are not to advance so far: when the enemy is at some distance, the waggons may march between the squadrons, but if near, they must be placed in the rear of the Regiment, with an escort of 60 men, under the command of a Captain Lieutenant.

The advanced guard is not only thoroughly to reconnoitre the country in front, but on the adjacent

jaçent sides also, to prevent the Regiment from being suddenly attacked, without having first received any intelligence of the danger; for a further security likewise, every Squadron must detach a non-commissioned Officer and 4 men, who are to patrol upon the flanks to the distance of 150 paces, and to scour the neighbouring woods and villages in order to discover all ambuscades, or other designs of the enemy to obstruct their march.

N. B. The rear guard must never be dispersed amongst the baggage, but always march together in a body.

Art. 2. The village must first be always well searched by a patrol, before a Regiment marches into its cantonments; and immediately after, a grand guard posted towards the enemy: all the approaches are to be guarded by sufficient numbers on foot, exclusive of a main guard, which is to be posted in the center of the village; a picquet-guard must be also appointed, which is to remain together in some house, and to have their horses saddled during the night: the grand-guard, village guard and picquet are to have all the avenues blocked up with waggons; to have their sentries planted double, and their inferior guards told off in two divisions: Patrols must be sent out every half hour in the night time: in the morning likewise at break of day, and at sun-set in the evening, parties must be detached over all the roads, to discover whether some of the Enemy may not be assembled in the neighbourhood, intending to surprize the Quarters; as

those are the usual hours at which they would be most likely to succeed in any such attempt.

Art. 3. If the village should be attacked by small bodies of the enemy, the guards posted at the avenues must persist in defending themselves with the utmost obstinacy, till the whole have gained time to saddle their horses and to mount, after which they can march out through some other opening, and disperse the enemy.

N. B. The grand-guards, at the approach of the Enemy, must post themselves in such a manner, as to have their rear free; after which, provided they can be supported by the guards, which are posted on foot in the village, they may detach some of their best mounted men to skirmish with the enemy, till the whole Regiment is got ready, and in a condition to put them entirely to the rout: But as such attacks are usually either made about the time of sun-set or break of day, commanding Officers must be very alert at those hours, and in a particular manner attentive to their duty.

Art. 4. When the forage in a cantonment is not sufficient for the troops, and it becomes necessary to have the deficiency supplied from other villages, the Men must never be sent single for it, but always a strong covering party ordered.

Art. 5. When a Regiment is to march in a direction towards the enemy, the baggage must be placed in the rear; but if the contrary way, in the front; disposed in which manner, the Regiment will serve to cover it.

Art.

Art. 6. Where a Regiment of Horse or Dragoons, on a march, is either quartered for the night, or in cantonments, the main-guard is to consist of a Captain, 1 Subaltern-Officer, and 40 men; an Officer likewise with 20 more, or if necessary 30, must be posted at the entrance into the village; and at every foot-path, or other out-let, a non-commissioned Officer and twelve, or whatever force the commanding Officer shall judge sufficient: the avenues are to be blocked up with the carriages, and the shafts fastened together in such a manner, as to be with difficulty got asunder: the guards posted at the gates, or out-lets, must always face to the high-road, and draw up either three deep, or two deep, in proportion to their strength or weakness.

Art. 7. All guards, be they ever so small, are to be told off in two divisions, that when they are attacked by the enemy, they may not spend their whole fire at once, but always have one division shouldered under another: a Lance-Corporal must be posted in the center between the two divisions of a non-commissioned Officer's guard, with his carbine ordered; the chain of sentries is to be continued from one post to another, and they are never to be planted in open fields, but behind the ditches, or garden-hedges, which surround the village; neither must there be above a third part of the main-guard posted sentries at a time: After the guards are thus disposed round the village, the Captains may dismiss their troops. — The main-guard, if possible, must take post in a church-yard, surrounded with a stone-wall; or in some strong-built house, or such other defensible place:

place: the Officers on guard must be very alert, and strictly examine every thing that passes out and in, for the better detection of spies: the picquet-guard, consisting of a Lieutenant and thirty Men, is to mount at six o'clock in the evening, and must be posted in some house, in the weakest and most exposed part of the village: the sentries must begin to challenge, as soon as it is dark, and continue doing so, during the whole night; the Rounds and Patroles are to keep going every quarter of an hour, up and down the village from one guard to another: a light must be kept burning in every quarter of the village, and a man appointed to keep watch, and constantly attend it, that in case any thing extraordinary should happen, the whole may be presently alarmed and assembled: the Men are to have their carbines and cartridge-pouches in the room wherein they lie, but they must be placed in such a manner, that every one will be able upon occasion, to find his own immediately, and that no accidents can possibly happen from the powder. — The commanding Officer must take care to have the baggage drawn up in such a manner, as to be exposed to no sort of danger from the enemy.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Orders relating to Action.

Article 1.

THE Army, in an engagement, must be always drawn up in two lines, and when the first advances against the enemy, the second is to remain at such a distance, as to be out of danger from the fire.

Art. 2. All Squadrons, when they are to attack the enemy, are to advance with their swords drawn, standards flying, and the † trumpets sounding a *march*; nor shall any Officer commanding a Squadron, as his honour and reputation are at stake, presume to fire; but shall fall upon the enemy sword in hand, for which the Generals of Brigades shall be responsible.

Art. 3. The Officers must always aspire to attack first, and not suffer themselves to be attacked; and are to encourage their Men to keep a good countenance, and persuade them that the enemy are much inferior: they must also charge them in the strictest terms, to shew no mercy, but to destroy as many as they possibly can; and, after the enemy is routed, not to pursue too rashly, but, at the *call*, immediately join their Squadrons, because singly they will be able to do but little execution,

† — Drummers beating, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

ecution, but when formed in Squadrons, a great deal.

N. B. During the engagement the men are not to talk, or to make the least noise, but must be very attentive to the word of command from their Officers; and are absolutely not to fire their carbines till the enemy is entirely put to flight.

Art. 4. The manner of charging the enemy is to be the same as directed in the Evolutions, in the preceding part of these *Regulations*; namely, to advance first on a brisk trot, and then to fall into a full gallop, taking care at the same time to keep their ranks and files well closed: if the Squadrons, when they make a charge, will strictly comply with these instructions, the king himself will be answerable for it, that the enemy must always give ground.

N. B. If any man is deficient in his duty, or attempts to run away, the nearest Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, must put him to death.

Art. 5. When the first line of the enemy gives way, the commanding Officers of Squadrons are to sound the *call*, in order to complete them again as quick as possible; and afterwards to fall, without loss of time, upon the second line.

Art. 6. The second line must be drawn up opposite to the intervals of the first, that in case any Squadron in it should be repulsed, the Squadron nearest may move briskly up to its support, and by dint of fresh vigour and intrepidity drive back the enemy: moreover, when the first line has

has suffered much, the second must be ordered up with all expedition to reinstate it.

N. B. No Man shall be permitted, under any pretence whatsoever, to quit his Squadron, for which the Officers respectively shall be responsible.

Art. 7. All officers in the Cavalry must assure themselves that there are only two methods of defeating an enemy ; the first of which is, by attacking them with the utmost force and impetuosity ; and the second, by out-flanking them.— It must be a standing maxim, and upon all occasions the principal object of every Officer's care, to gain a power, if possible, to attack the enemy in flank, because with such an advantage he will be much sooner able at all times to defeat them.

Art. 8. If the Colonel of a Regiment is killed, the Lieutenant-Colonel must supply his place ; if the Lieutenant-Colonel is killed, the Major is to succeed to his ; if the Major, the eldest Captain : in like manner, when a Captain, who commands a Squadron, is either killed, or so severely wounded as to be carried into the rear, the Captain next in seniority must take the command of it, and after him, in case he should also share a similar fate, the eldest Lieutenant.

Art. 9. Any private Man, who takes a colour, standard, or kettle drum from the enemy, shall be always handsomely rewarded for his bravery ; but any Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, signalizing himself in so conspicuous a manner, will recommend himself highly to his Majesty, and infallibly obtain preferment.

Art.

Art. 10. After the Action is over, every Regiment must immediately collect their wounded Men, and have them conveyed to some certain place, there to be dressed and taken all proper care of: but during the action, no wounded shall be carried off, unless it be Officers by their own servants; nor any be removed, but such as have strength to go themselves to the surgeons, without any other assistance.

Art. 11. The Trumpeters and Drummers shall remain upon the flanks of their respective Squadrons, the Kettle-drummers excepted, who are to be sent, together with a small guard, into the rear of the Regiment.

N. B. The Chaplains and Surgeons are to remain with the baggage during the engagement, on purpose to attend, and take the best care of the wounded.

Art. 12. When there is to be an action, all the baggage, excepting the bat-horses, must be left behind.

Art. 13. An Officer who is guilty of cowardice in an engagement must be put under arrest by his Colonel, after which he shall be turned out of the army with infamy, and his sword broken in pieces: a Captain so offending, shall, besides the ignominy, lose the value of his commission, and his Majesty will present it to some other Officer who has better deserved it.

C H A P.

CHAP. XX.

Directions for the Care and Preservation
of the Horses in Time of War.

Article 1.

AN Officer must always go with the horses to water, and never more than one Troop, or Half-squadron be suffered to water at a Time.

Art. 2. The Officers must take particular care, that the Men fodder their horses regularly; that they rub down, and curry them well; and further, that they imbibe a regard for them, and learn to be sensible of the many advantages which they themselves will reap in consequence of the pains they bestow upon them; for which reason it becomes a point necessary to be inculcated as much as possible by all Officers, that for the horses to be in good condition, whether in an engagement or on a march, is always of the highest importance.

Art. 3. If a regiment or party is posted near the Enemy, the horses will receive no damage, although they are kept saddled for the space of twenty-four hours, provided that the commanding Officer only takes care that the Men loosen the girths a few times in the day, and wipe their backs.

Art.

Art. 4. As it does not require much art to keep the horses in good order, after every thing necessary for that purpose has been first provided; the Officers therefore in the Cavalry, must make it their particular study, notwithstanding it should now and then be attended with some extraordinary expence to them, to preserve them constantly in that state, and by their application and diligence endeavour to have them, even in the worst of times, in fit condition for service.

Art. 5. It is the duty of every Officer to acquire a knowledge of the diseases which horses are subject to, and the medicines proper to be applied, because all such acquirements are highly essential for their preservation.

Art. 6. Officers must instruct their men in what manner to load their horses, so as not to gall their backs, taking care at the same time that the baggage is always well packed up, and as much as possible of an equal weight on both sides; and that the saddles, and every other part of their furniture is in complete order.

Art. 7. His Majesty will positively not allow a Lieutenant, or Quarter-Master to have the command of a Troop, or Squadron, but charges every Captain to keep it himself alone, because he must be a very contemptible Officer, if he is in any respect unable to support a proper authority over his own men.

Art.

Art. 8. It is not only the interest of his Majesty, for a Squadron to be kept complete and in good condition, but, in a particular manner, that of the Officers belonging to it, because they will then have it always in their power to out-flank the enemy, and with horses robust, and full of vigour, must certainly over-power them; every Officer, therefore, as his life, honour, and reputation are depending, is required to discharge his duty with the utmost diligence, and take all possible care to keep the Men as well as horses constantly in the best order.

C H A P. XXI.

Instructions concerning the Baggage on
a March.

Article 1.

ON a march, the baggage must be placed according to the disposition made by the commander in chief; but the regimental waggons, which carry the cash, are to remain with their respective Regiments, except when they are marching to attack the enemy.

Art. 2. The waggons are to be numbered, and to follow one another regularly, and in numerical order by Regiment.

Art. 3. A covering party over the baggage must be appointed by the commander in chief,
P the

the strength of which is discretionary, and to be determined by circumstances.

Art. 4. When the commanding Officer of the party has reason to apprehend himself in any danger, he must take every precaution to frustrate the enemy's designs, and deprive them of all opportunity to surprise him, or attack his baggage; for which purpose it will be absolutely requisite to have patrols both in front, rear, and upon the flanks, in order to discover their ambuscades in time, so as to take the proper measures effectually to counter-act and disappoint them; and this vigilance and attention is in a more particular manner necessary in the passage of hollow ways, woods and thickets.

N. B. In marching through hollow-ways which are difficult to pass, small detachments are to be posted upon both flanks, and in the front and rear likewise, there to remain till the baggage has got through; the same must be done in the passage of all woods and thickets.

These precautions are not only necessary for covering parties appointed over the baggage, but are to be put in practice likewise by all escorts, or detachments on a march.

Art. 5. An Officer on a march, particularly if he has a large body under his command, must always have an advanced guard and a rear-guard, and take care to reconnoitre well the country, and to scour all villages, woods, defiles, and hollow ways, before he passes them: the Officers commanding the advanced and rear-guards must likewise themselves take the same precautions before they march through such places, in order to secure a passage,
with-

without subjecting themselves to any apprehension of being obstructed.

C H A P. XXII.

Of Field-Equipages.



Article 1.

A General of the Horse shall take into the field, one chaise or coach, with six horses to draw it; one baggage-waggon; three chaise marines; twelve bat-horses or mules, and as many saddle-horses as he pleases.

Art. 2. A Lieutenant-General shall take one chaise or chariot, with four horses to draw it; one baggage-waggon; two chaise-marines; eight bat-horses, or mules, and as many saddle-horses as he pleases.

Art. 3. A Major-General shall take one chaise, with four horses to draw it; one baggage-waggon; one chaise-marine; six bat-horses or mules, and eight saddle-horses.

Art. 4. A Colonel shall take one chaise, with two, or at most four, horses to draw it; two chaise-marines; six bat-horses or mules, and six saddle-horses.

Art. 5. A Lieutenant-Colonel shall take one chaise-marine; four bat-horses or mules, and five saddle horses.

Art. 6. A Major shall take one chaise-marine, four bat-horses or mules, and four saddle-horses.

Art. 7. A Captain shall take two chaise-marines, one for his troop, and the other for himself, and three or four saddle-horses.

N. B. All the chaise-marines shall be coloured alike, and the names of their respective Regiments painted upon them; as shall also every General's name be painted in like manner upon the baggage-waggons, and chaise-marines, which belong to him.

The bread-waggons shall remain with their respective Troops, and must be kept, together with all appurtenancies, always in complete order, that whenever they shall be ordered into the field, the minutest thing may not be wanting.

The bat-horses for the troop-tents are exclusive of these.

Art. 8. The Subaltern-Officers shall take two saddle-horses, and one bat-horse; but are positively not to have waggons, and all such as are provided contrary to this regulation, shall be burnt.

C A A P.

CHAP. XXIII.

Directions to General Officers for
the Keeping of their Tables in
Camp.

Article 1.

A Field-marshal shall have one large table of ten covers, without any desert; and one small table of six covers, for the orderly Officers.

Art. 2. A General of the horse shall have one table with eight covers, and six dishes, without any desert; and one small table with four covers for the orderly Officers.

Art. 3. A Lieutenant General shall have one table with eight covers, and six dishes, without any desert: and a Major-General, one table with six covers, and five dishes without desert.

Art. 4. No Entertainment shall be given in the evenings, and any Officer, disobeying this order, shall forfeit 600 ducats to the invalid-found, the payment of which shall be secured by the solicitor-General.

CHAP. XXIV.

Containing Instructions for the Management of the Baggage in general, as well on a March, as on all other Occasions.

Article 1.

THE disposition of the covering party over the baggage, is always made by the King, or commander in chief, according as circumstances may require: the Officers on such commands, are to govern their conduct by the directions given in the 21st chapter, and strictly to observe the following regulations.

Art. 2. The whole baggage of the army, is to remain under the care and management of the waggon master-general, as well on a march, as on a day of action; and all who belong to it, particularly the waggoners, must pay an absolute obedience to his authority; must comply with all his orders without the least contradiction, and, on pain of death, immediately execute them; nor must any waggon be drove in any other place, than where he shall order.

Art. 3. Before the army begins its march, the waggon-master-general is to receive an order from the
the

the quarter-master-General, containing the route, and the number of columns, in which the baggage shall march, which order he must punctually comply with, and accordingly form the disposition of the baggage.

Art. 4. The waggon-master-General shall refer only to the Quarter-Master-General, concerning the march of the baggage, because he is to receive his orders and instructions relating to it, only from him.

Art. 5. When the baggage marches in several columns, the waggon-master-general shall depute a proper person at the head of every one, to preserve it in order, during the march.

Art. 6. Every Solicitor and waggon-master shall attend the waggons of his respective Regiment and keep them always in regular succession, as follows ;

1. The General's, or Colonel's waggon.
2. The waggons of the General's, or Colonel's Troop or Squadron.
3. The waggons of the other Troops or Squadrons, which are to follow one another regularly, in the order, in which they are drawn up, and according to the rank of the troop or squadron they belong to, for which purpose they must be all numbered.

Art. 7. After the manner above described, are the waggons of every Regiment to march, and in the order in which they rank in their brigade ; the waggon-master-general must therefore take care to dispose the whole accordingly.

Art.

Art. 8. When any Solicitor does not march with the baggage of his Regiment, to take the proper care of it, and to keep it in regular order, the waggon-master-general shall be obliged, immediately after the march, to report him; and the Solicitor so offending, must be put under arrest; and if any disorder, or damage be the consequence of his absence, he shall be cashiered.

Art. 9. The waggon-master-general shall, on these occasions, have the Solicitors subject to his command, and they are to execute his disposition of the march, and all other orders he may think proper to give relative to it, without the least contradiction.

Art. 10. The baggage must be packed up, and ready in good time, the day it is to march; and the Solicitor and waggon-master of every Regiment are to be on the spot, in order to march off with their respective baggage regularly in columns, according to the waggon-master-general's directions.

Art. 11. all the waggons of the whole baggage without exception, must march in their regular places, preserve their divisions, and follow in close succession, but without either driving against one another, or making any openings: no waggon must try to get before, and crowd in amongst others, out of its own proper place; nor halt, and so detain those which follow, but every one keep its appointed division without stopping.

The Waggon-master-general, the Solicitors, as also the waggon-masters of Regiments must industriously

dustriously preserve the above described regularity; and any waggoner presuming to act in opposition to orders, shall be immediately punished with the utmost severity.

Art. 12. In passing defiles, bridges, ditches, woods, villages, towns, and the like places, the waggons must march regularly, and in the manner in which the Waggon-Master-General has first disposed them, without quitting their respective divisions, or crowding amongst others: any waggoner, who is not governed by his instructions, but shall presume to break the order of march, must be chastised on the spot with the utmost rigour, and brought back to his place again; but if he persists in being refractory, or offers to make any resistance against the commanding Officer, he must be instantly shot through the head.

Art. 13. No waggoner, or other attendant upon the baggage, shall dare, on pain of death, to quit his carriage on a march in order to drink, to steal, or plunder; the Provost-General therefore, together with his party, shall march with the baggage, and, when any waggoner leaves his carriage to steal, or plunder, shall apprehend him, and immediately hang him without trial.

N. B. Any soldiers wives, or such like persons, found guilty of stealing on a march, shall also meet with the same punishment.

Art. 14. When the baggage will be attacked on its march, no waggoner must dare to drive away, or to any other place than where the Waggon-Master-General shall direct; nor to move his
waggon

waggon from the spot, where he shall be commanded to halt. If one, or more waggoners shall, nevertheless, presume to break the order of march, and drive their carriages away, the Waggon-master general, or the persons posted at the head of such columns, or the Solicitors, shall immediately shoot every Waggoner so offending through the head, and by such exemplary punishments preserve the rest in order.

Art. 15. On a day of action, the Waggon-master general and his Assistants must keep the baggage in the most strict and regular order; it must not be suffered to be moved from the ground on which it is halted, nor the Waggoners to stir from their carriages. When the Waggon-master-general shall occasionally demand the Waggoners to advance, or draw back, they must do it without breaking their order, and are constantly to keep in their respective columns and divisions; any such Waggoners as shall behave contradictorily to these directions, or attempt, in compliance with their own fears, to abandon their charge and fly, must be instantly shot.

On these, and other the like exigencies, the baggage-escort must, without any scruple, be assisting to the Waggon-master-general, and his Deputies; and contribute as much as possible to keep the Waggoners and carriages in order.

Art. 16. Any waggoner, or other person whatsoever belonging to the baggage, who shall dare to take advantage of such opportunities to break open and plunder any chests, or other baggage, shall be instantly put to death; or, if circumstances
and

and time will permit, shall be hanged up, without the least respect of person; nor shall any waggoner or servant, on pain of death, presume, upon any alarm, to unlink his horses, to cut the traces asunder, drive his horses away, or leave the carriages behind.

Art. 17. All the Officers on the baggage-escort are strictly to observe the behaviour of their Men upon an alarm; and to take great care, that they don't quit their ranks, or begin to plunder the carriages, for which themselves shall be answerable.

Art. 18. When the Waggon-master-general and his Deputies order a barricado to be made, every Waggon-master and Servant must prepare for it; and without the least dispute or contradiction on pain of death, drive his carriage according to the instructions he shall then receive, that the barricado may be formed with as much expedition as possible.

Art. 19. When a waggon breaks down, the train is not to be stopped by it, but to keep driving on regularly, and such waggon must be left behind; in the mean time, the Waggon-master-general, and his assistants, are to take care that it be immediately repaired, and afterwards drove up into its former place again; but if it be so damaged, as not possibly to admit of being repaired, the most valuable things must then be distributed upon the other waggons, and the broken carriage left behind.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Sutlers.

Article 1.

WHEN a Regiment takes the field, the Colonel must take care that there be a Cook provided to diet the Officers, and a Sutler to every Squadron.

Art. 2. No Troopers, or Dragoons, shall be suffered to sutle, and such as have wives who sutle, shall notwithstanding do every part of their duty, and always march with their respective Squadrons, for which the Colonel shall be answerable, on pain of being cashiered.

N. B. A Trooper, or Dragoon, may be permitted, so that it don't interfere with his duty, to deal in bacon, butter, cheese, tobacco, brandy, and all kinds of small wares in camp; he may also carry cheese, brandy, and tobacco, to sell to the men on a march, but must nevertheless march in rank and file with his Troop, or Squadron, and only be permitted to dispose of such things during a halt.

Art. 3. The Solicitor-General shall regulate weights and measures, as also the price of beer and flesh-meat; and shall be answerable, that such price be imposed according to equity, so that the Sutlers may be able to subsist by it, and the Soldiers not be oppressed.

Art.

Art. 4. The Solicitor-General shall have 16 † groses monthly from every Sutler; the Major of the Regiment 16 likewise; and the Adjutant eight; the Sutlers shall not be required to pay more, and although they should voluntarily offer to do it, no Officer shall receive it, on pain of being cashiered.

Art. 5. All persons bringing provisions into camp shall pass without molestation; nor be plundered, on pain of hanging to the offenders.

C H A P. XXVI.

The Number of Servants allowed by his Majesty in Time of War.

Article 1.

IN time of war, his Majesty will allow one servant per Squadron for the baggage-waggons; one for the bat-horses, and one to attend the sick; and to every servant one † dollar, twelve groses per month; as also a pound and half of bread per day: these servants shall be bound by oath to their Regiments, that the Officers may have a greater dependance upon them, and be better able to keep them in due subjection.

Art.

† See below, Part 9, Chap. I.

Art. 2. The Colonels, or commanding Officers of Regiments must not, on pain of being cashiered, suffer Officers, under any pretence whatsoever, to have Troopers either to take care of their Horses, or to wait upon their persons; and every Officer who shall, notwithstanding this Order, presume to employ a Trooper, shall be cashiered.

N. B. The servants of all Regiments are to have green coats lined with white; which must be rendered distinguishable by the difference of their lace or facings.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Camp Utensils.

Article 1.

EVERY Troop of Horse shall be supplied with fifteen camp kettles, 15 cantines, and hatchets; and every Squadron of Dragoons with double the number of each, when they take the field; which, together with all other camp-necessaries, must be taken good care of, both on a march, and in camp.

N. B. In time of peace, the camp-utensils must be carefully laid up in the store-rooms.

Linnen bags must be made for the camp-kettles, and black leather-cases for the shovels, mattocks, and hatchets; as also yellow leather-slings for the kettles and cantines.

Art.

Art. 2. No Whores shall be suffered to stay in camp: when any one, therefore, comes into a Regiment, the Colonel or commanding Officer must order her to be stripped naked, and turned out. The General Officers likewise are not to allow any Whores to remain at head-quarters, much less any Whore-Tents to be pitched, to prevent which, the Solicitor-General is required to be careful.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Consisting of Directions for the Care of the Sick, and the Preservation of the Soldiery in general.

Article 1.

A General hospital must be appointed in the nearest town, to which the sick Men of every Regiment are to be sent, and there left under the care of such non-commissioned Officers to whom the charge of their subsistence money may be committed.

N. B. As it is his Majesty's pleasure that eight surgeons should constantly remain with the medicine-chest, so every other surgeon is to return to his Regiment after he has lodged his sick in the hospital.

Art. 2. When the Army is in a standing-camp, the medicine chest must be kept at the hospital,

pital, and no medicines are to be given out of it to the Surgeon-Majors of Regiments; but his Majesty will allow 112 dollars to every surgeon-Major, for medicines for the whole Regiment, and likewise forage-money for four horses; with which he is to provide all kinds of necessary medicines, for such sick men, as are not sent to the general hospital: and that no surgeon may be suffered to want his proper quantities, a Physician and the Surgeon-General of the army, shall, about once every month, visit the regimental medicine chests; for which reason the Surgeon-General, and a physician are to attend the army constantly.

Art. 3. When men are so sick, on a march, as to be unable to ride, they must be carried upon waggons, if any can be procured for that purpose, till the army marches again into a standing camp, and they can be sent to the hospital.

Art. 4. The 5 servants which his Majesty allows to every Regiment, are to attend the sick in camp.

Every Captain shall furnish eight blankets for the use of his sick men.

Art. 5. The sick men, and such also whose horses are out of order must be ordered to march with the medicine chest; nor shall any sick man be suffered to do duty, till he is perfectly recovered, for fear of a relapse.

Art. 6. The Captains must have good broths made for their sick, and take all possible care that they be well supplied with every thing necessary,
that

that they may the sooner be restored to their health, and become able to do duty.

Art. 7 The Surgeons Mates are always to attend their respective squadrons on a march, that, in case of sudden accidents, they may be at hand to apply the proper remedies; and their attendance is more particularly required, when the Regiment is in action.

N. B. The Surgeon-Major must be also present, when his Regiment is in action.

Art. 8. The Captains are strictly to oblige the men of every tent to join their pay, and mess together.

Nothing contributes so much to the preservation of the soldiery, as the eating of warm victuals every day, for which reason, when they cannot provide otherwise for themselves, they must eat their ammunition-bread boiled up in water, with some salt in it, and the Captains and commanding Officers of Regiments shall be answerable, that their men keep a good mess, and make the pot boil constantly once a day.

N. B. The messes must be divided in such a manner, that there may be always left off duty a sufficient number to provide victuals for their absent comrades.

C H A P. XXIX.

Concerning the March of an Army.

Article 1.

WHEN the commander in chief orders the army to march by the left, all squadrons are to wheel to the left, and march off by Divisions.

N. B. When a Regiment is to march off by the left, and to move out of its Encampment, the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpet-Major, or Hautboys, are immediately to post themselves to the Troop or Squadron upon the left flank; in like manner when a Regiment is to march out of Garrison by the left, the standard bearers, trumpeters or hautboys, and the Kettle-drummer, are to be assembled, and formed with the left Troop or Squadron, and not with the General's, as is usual at other times.

When the army is to decamp, the horses, before they are loaded, are to be rid to water with breedoons on, because, being led with halters only, they are subject to break loose; nor must any Trooper be permitted to lead more than one.

Art. 2. Every Regiment shall have a Waggon-Master, to whom, in time of war, his Majesty will allow 3 rix-dollars, and a portion of bread per month, out of the general fund, and also thirty rix-dollars for a saddle horse: on a march, he is to attend the baggage, taking care that the waggons follow one another regularly and close, and move up to their ground and off again in good order:
and

and to render the servants obedient to all his directions, strict orders to that effect must be given, both to those which belong to the commander in chief of the Regiment, and to every other Officer.

The Regimental waggon-Masters must be regularly posted upon the baggage, by the Waggon-Master General.

C H A P . XXX.

Further Observations and Instructions
concerning Foraging-Parties.

Article. 1.

THE Quarter-Master-General is first to reconnoitre the ground, where the army is to forage, after which he will be much better able to fix the disposition of the covering party with the General, or Officer who commands in chief.

Art. 2. When the foragers arrive at their ground, they must be all drawn up together, to receive such orders upon the spot as circumstances may render it necessary to give, after which every Regiment marches off to forage in its appointed place.

N. B. The foragers of the first Regiment in the front, must march slow, to prevent those which follow, from being obliged to run, which the Officers are to prohibit on pain of very severe punishment.

Q 2

Art.

Art. 3. When the Army is to forage near the enemy, and where there are copses and villages contiguous, in which they may have planted ambuscades, no man must be suffered either to wander from his party, or to venture into them; and if there is forage in the copses, the horses must be left at some distance from them in the open field, and the trusses, when made up, brought to them on foot.

N. B. The trusses are to be bound up with four forage-cords, to prevent the horses backs from being galled.

The private men must be taught, in time of peace, how to make up trusses of forage; how to load their horses also, and in what manner to mount afterwards, and ride with them.

CHAP. XXXI.

Further Directions to be observed by the Grand-guard.

Article 1.

THE Grand-guards, or advanced posts must be disposed as much as possible in such a manner, as not to have any defile too close to them, and the sentries planted so as to be able to discover every thing that passes, without being exposed themselves.

Art. 2. When the grand-guard has any reason to be apprehensive of an attack, it must retire,
as

as soon as it is dark, under cover of the army, where it is also to continue the day following, in case the weather should happen to be very foggy; and not advance towards the enemy again, till all the intervening country has been thoroughly reconnoitred.

Art. 3. The patrols are to keep near their posts, because by advancing too far, they may, in the night-time, be easily surpris'd and carried off,

Art. 4. The videts, having cocked their carbines, must challenge the patrols when they approach within a few paces off their posts, and are not to demand the counter-sign too loud, lest it should be discovered by the Enemy.

Art. 5. When any post belonging to the Grand-Guard is alarmed, the post nearest to it, must immediately repair to the spot, and the commanding Officer of the Grand-Guard, provided he finds it necessary, is to draw in all his sentries, and march the whole to the place where it happened.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Convoys.

Article. 1.

AN Officer, having the command of a convoy, must take all possible precautions for his security; and although circumstances may happen upon his march, for which it is impossible to prescribe particular rules of conduct, and which must, at all events, be referred to his own discretion; nevertheless, he will in general find great help upon these occasions from the following instructions.

Art. 2. The commanding Officer of a convoy, must endeavour, before his march, to procure some good intelligence concerning the enemy's out-parties; and as the Commandant of the place, from which the convoy is to march, and those of such other places as it is to pass by, are the most proper persons to apply to for assistance; he must therefore take such measures, as will enable him to keep up a constant intercourse with them.

Art. 3. The time appointed for the march of a convoy, must be kept as profound a secret as possible: some particular day may first be given out for it, in order to impose upon the enemy, after which the convoy can depart sooner; but
the

the gate of the town must, if possible, be kept shut both before, and after its march.

Art. 4. The commanding Officer of a convoy must be very vigilant on his march, and keep patrols constantly out, not only in the front, but in the rear likewise, in order to deprive the enemy of all opportunities of falling upon him unexpectedly.

Art. 5. The commanding Officer of a convoy must divide well mounted Hussars amongst the carriages, and take all possible care that they follow close, one after another; nor is any single one to be permitted to halt for forage, lest the march should be thereby retarded, or the train lengthened, to prevent which it is also necessary to see, that they are not over-loaded.

Art. 6. An Officer, having the command of a small escort, must conduct the waggons, or whatever he may have to escort, in the center of it; and must never march through Copses, Woods, or villages, till they have been first reconnoitred by a small party proportionable to his command, which he is to advance before him for that purpose; if he be attacked, he must endeavour as much as possible, to preserve his rear free and secure; and must draw up the carriages on the most commodious piece of ground, till, by an obstinate resistance, he may have dispersed the enemy, and can pursue his march.

Art. 7. An Officer commanding a large escort, is to have a van-guard to reconnoitre the
Q 4 way

way before him, and likewise a rear guard, both composed of Hussars or Dragoons: he must also detach small parties to patrol upon the flanks, with orders carefully to examine all copses, woods and villages contiguous to the road; to march up to the top of every adjacent hill, or eminence, and take a survey of the country, and, by giving intelligence upon their discovery of any danger, prevent his being surpris'd.

N. B. An Officer having the command of a detachment of Infantry, shall never divide them into small platoons, on pain of being cashiered; but when his escort consists of a whole battalion, he shall post one division in the front of the carriages, two in the center of them, and the fourth in the rear: if he has cavalry, they must be divided, in proportion to their numbers, between the divisions; he is moreover to take particular care that the waggons follow in close succession, one after another, nor fall into too long a train.

Art. 8. When there is any hollow way to pass, an advanced guard is to march through first; and some platoons, or divisions, according to the strength of the detachment, must be ordered to take possession of the eminencies on each side, before the escort with the carriages is to pass.

N. B. The platoons, or divisions, are to remain upon the eminencies, till the escort has passed the hollow-way, in order to deter the enemy from making any attempts to obstruct it: and after the whole has marched through, they are to fall into the rear of their command again.

Art. 9. The utmost care and precaution must be taken, in the conducting of powder-waggons; the
men

men must not be suffered to smoke tobacco, and the carriages are to be driven gently over stone-pavements, lest the powder should take fire, because such an accident might be attended with very bad consequences: And if at any time a powder, corn, bread, or forage-waggon, should happen to break down upon the road, the directions before given in Chap. 24, Art. 19, relating to such accidents, are to be observed.

Art. 10. Wherever an escort halts a night, the commanding Officer must have the waggons always carefully secured from fire; and the defile, village, or town so effectually guarded, as to remain exposed to no danger from the enemy.

Art. 11. The commanding Officer is to post a detachment of his cavalry towards the enemy, by way of grand-guard, and keep patrols constantly going during the night, that in case the enemy should make any disposition to attack him, he may be able to receive timely intelligence of it.

Art. 12. When the commanding Officer of a convoy has certain intelligence, that the enemy are in motion, he must, if circumstances require it, immediately send advice thereof to his commander in chief, and to the garrison most contiguous: and when it happens, that he has undoubted reason to expect being attacked, it will then become more prudent for him, notwithstanding the enemy should be even superior in numbers, to march against them himself, and begin the attack, rather than wait to receive it; upon emergencies of which kind, it is always incumbent upon the com.

commanding Officer to take, as much as he possibly can, the advantage of the ground.

Art. 13. If the enemy are much too powerful, and it is absolutely impossible for the convoy to maintain its ground against them, but the commanding Officer has at the same time sufficient reason to expect relief by some means or other, he must, in that case, provided the circumstances of time and ground will admit of it, form a barricade with the carriages, and send intelligence of his situation, to all the places from which he can expect any assistance.

In general let it be observed, that it becomes a good Officer to take all imaginable precautions; to deny himself during the whole march, all manner of ease and indulgence, and study, in a particular manner, to render himself conspicuous for diligence, and attention to his duty.

N. B. When a waggon breaks down, the loading must be distributed amongst the others, and it removed out of the way, so as not to obstruct the march of the remaining part of the column.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Patroles.

Article 1.

AS the Patroles usually consist of a few men, and are always detached in the night-time;
ge-

generally to dangerous places, and more than once to the same; they are therefore, as much as possible, to avoid going at certain hours, and not to keep constantly one way, either in their march out, or return.

Art. 2. The Patroles are always to march at some distance behind one another, especially in passing defiles; and are not to enter any village, without having first detached a man or two to reconnoitre it, and to examine either the priest, constable, or some inhabitant, concerning the enemy.

Art. 3. The men who are furthest advanced in the front of the Patroles, are frequently to halt, and listen whether they can hear any thing; to do which they must dismount, and lay their ears close to the ground: On Horseback, they are to move as gently as possible, are not to sing, to speak loud, or to smoke tobacco, without a stopper over the pipe, to hinder the fire from being seen: the horses must be likewise prevented, as much as possible, from neighing, or making any noise.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of Ambuscades.

Article 1.

WHEN an Officer would plant his party in an ambuscade, he must, with great caution, fix upon the thicket, or other situation the most convenient for his purpose before hand; must keep his design an inviolable secret; march to the place either in the night-time, or at day-break, and have it first reconnoitred, before he takes possession of it, lest he himself should fall into the same snare, which he was preparing for the enemy.

Art. 2. After the ambuscade is planted, the commanding Officer must secret his men in such a manner, as not possibly to be discovered: if it be in a wood, he is to post his sentries in trees during the day-time; if in an open country, on the nearest eminencies, so that nothing may escape their observation: but in the night, he is to take such other precautions for his security, as are ordinarily made use of.

N. B. In an open country, the sentries are to lie flat upon the ground in the day-time.

Art. 3. The whole party are to keep their horses bridled, and in constant readiness, in the day-

day-time; and the commanding Officer must frequently call the roll over, that no one may have any opportunity to steal away, and give intelligence to the enemy: but if notwithstanding, such an accident should happen, he must immediately either make a retreat, or change his post.

Art. 4. The Officer is not to sally out with his party too hastily, but to take good time, when he perceives that his stratagem will succeed, and the enemy fall into his snare.

Art. 5. If any straggling soldiers, peasants, or other persons happen to fall into the ambuscade, they are to be taken prisoners, and kept in safe custody: in the night-time the commanding Officer must be careful that his men keep a profound silence; must suffer no fires to be made, give out no counter-sign, and prohibit all manner of noise; some of the sentries are moreover to lie down at their posts, placing their ears close to the ground, that they may be able to hear the approach of any thing the sooner; on which account they are likewise to be relieved the oftener.

Art. 6. When an Officer has any foundation to imagine, that the enemy have acquired intelligence of him, he must either change his post, or make a retreat, as has been directed in a preceding article.

C H A P. XXXV.

Of Out-Parties.

Article 1.

ALTHOUGH very good intelligence may now a days be had from spies, nevertheless it is on many occasions necessary to send out parties; and it is moreover the only method, to form recruits, and to infuse courage into them; because it is too dangerous, to defer the first trial of men, till the day of a general engagement.

The commanding Officers of parties, must be very careful on their march, and in a particular manner attentive to the execution of their duty, because the following articles will furnish them with instructions for their conduct upon most occasions.

Art. 2. An Officer who is detached on party, should be thoroughly acquainted with the country, but if deficient in that respect, he must be provided with proper guides.

Art. 3. An Officer on party must always avoid being seen, and for that reason is to march chiefly in the night time, till he has executed his charge; after which he must make his retreat by a different road.

Art.

Art. 4. An Officer on party is to shun all villages; but if he is obliged to pass through any, he must do it in the night time; and when it happens, that he cannot avoid marching through a village even in the day-time, he is not to do it regularly by troops, or squadrons, but in a promiscuous and confused manner, in order to prevent the inhabitants as much as possible, from judging of the strength of his party.

Art. 5. An Officer on party, must carefully reconnoitre all such suspicious places, as he is obliged to pass; must always guard against a surprise, keep his designs a secret, and frequently tell over his men, lest he should be betrayed by any deserters from his own party.

Art. 6. When an Officer suffers his party to take refreshment, he is to do it in the open field, and never in houses, or villages; he must at the same time be particularly careful, that nothing belonging to the inhabitants is damaged, and manage them in such a manner, as to prevent their betraying him to the enemy.

Art. 7. When an Officer marches on command in the night-time, he must alwas keep his advanced guard at a small distance only before him, and likewise have it stronger than in the day, that in case it should happen to meet with any detached party of the enemy, it may be sufficient to repulse them at once, because at that time, every other measure will be impracticable.

Art.

Art. 8. An Officer on these commands is to divide his men into small parties, formed in two ranks, that, if it becomes necessary to discover himself, he may both perplex the enemy the more, and shew a larger front: this disposition, moreover, will at all events better enable him to secure his retreat; nevertheless he must take care, that the whole may be always in a capacity to join upon occasion, and to form a larger body, if circumstances shall require it.

N. B. Small Parties of the enemy are not to be pursued rashly, or too far, particularly where there is any reason to apprehend they may have a reserve.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Night-Marches.

Article 1.

AS it may very easily happen, that in the marching of a large detachment in the night-time, some Troops or Squadrons may lose themselves, especially where there are any cross-roads, or difficult passes: in order therefore to prevent such accidents, two or three guides must be procured, if possible; and, after they have satisfied each other concerning the route, by a previous consultation together, be distributed in the detachment.

Art. 2. The commanding Officer at the head of the detachment must march slow, provided the

na-

nature of his expedition will admit of it; and wherever he finds any by-roads on the march, he must post a few Men there, to direct the succeeding Squadron; which Squadron is to repeat the same caution, and so on throughout the whole.

Art. 3. As it is almost impossible for Squadrons to keep constantly close to one another; and as it likewise frequently happens, that in order to conceal a march from the enemy, no Trumpet must be sounded, or Drum beaten, which would otherwise serve for a Direction in the night-time; a good non-commissioned Officer therefore, with four, five, or six men, must be appointed to the rear of every Squadron, who are to divide themselves, and to form a chain in the interval between it and the one succeeding, in order to prevent any mistake of the road.

Before the detachment marches off, the commanding Officer must be careful to exhort the Officers leading Troops, or Squadrons, strictly to observe all the above directions; and must also have several orderly men to attend him; and, if possible, more than one guide in the front.

Art. 4. The advanced-guard is not only to be stronger in the night-time, and to march only at a small distance from the main body, but also, whenever it shall happen unexpectedly to meet a body of the enemy, must instantly charge it with all possible vigour; on which account, and in order to be in continual readiness, it is always to march with advanced arms.

N. B. In the day-time, the advanced-guard is usually to march at a considerable distance from the main-body, but not out of fight; and must have a few good men, or a small party advanced before it, to give timely intelligence to the commanding Officer, in case they should discover any thing of the enemy.

C H A P. XXXVII.

Of making a Retreat.

Article 1.

IN order to secure the retreat of a large detachment in the best manner in the presence of the enemy, it will be necessary to form it in two lines, at the distance of 200 large paces asunder: the first line is to wheel by fours by Squadrons, and retreating through the intervals of the second, march about two or three hundred paces in its rear, according as it may be more or less pressed by the enemy, and then face about again.

After the first line has thus moved into the rear of the second, the second is to wheel about, and to march through the first, and so on, both lines continuing to retreat in this manner, as long as it may be necessary.

Art. 2. During the retreat, a few small Parties, composed of the best and bravest Men, are to be advanced towards the enemy, in order to skirmish with them, and thereby to facilitate the movements of the main body.

N. B. This

N. B. This is what may frequently be necessary for the rear-guard to put in practice, when the enemy makes attempts either to obstruct, or to reconnoitre the march of the enemy.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Of passing a Bridge, or short Defile,
in the Presence of the Enemy.

THE commanding Officer having halted his party close to the bridge, or defile, and faced it towards the enemy, is to make the rear-ranks go to the right-about, and march through, as quick as possible, forming instantly again, after they have passed, on the opposite side; upon which the front-rank is then to face from right and left to the center, to move through at full speed by two's, and draw up in the rear of the rear-ranks.

C H A P. XXXIX.

Of passing Causeways, or large Defiles, where there is any Danger of being obstructed by the Enemy.

Article 1.

A Body of Men, in passing a large defile, or causeway, are not only to march in regular
R 2 order

order, and not too close together ; but to be formed with a front so narrow, as to leave room on the right flank for one man to move either forwards, or backwards, with ease ; that in case the enemy should attack them in the passage, they may be able to make a retreat, without being disordered by the firings, which is to be performed in the following manner : the front rank fires, then faces to the right, marches one after another along the flank, and falls into the rear of its division again ; after that, the center rank fires, and lastly the rear ; both ranks facing to the right, after they have given their fire, and marching to the rear, in the same manner as the front rank did ; which must be continued till they have retreated out of the defile.

Art. 2. When a body of Troops in a defile are to fire advancing, the above-described disposition must be observed ; namely, the center-rank, as soon as the front has fired, is to advance before it, and fire ; after that the rear rank ; then the front again ; and so on successively, till they have passed through the defile, nothing further being required, than to keep up an alternate and brisk fire, and to leave a sufficient space upon the flank, for a horse to pass by without any obstruction.

PART

PART VI.
OF
GARRISON DUTY.

CHAP. I.

Of Divine Worship in Garrison.

Article 1.

DIVINE Service shall be performed twice every Sunday, and Fast-day: when the church bell rings, the Troops, or Squadrons, are to be assembled, and drawn up before their Captains quarters, and the Rolls called; and no Officer, non commissioned Officer, Trumpeter, Drummer, or private Man, who is not on duty, shall be absent: after the Troops or Squadrons are formed, the Captains are to march them to church.

N. B. Every Captain must march his Troop, or Squadron, complete to church, in Officers and non-commissioned Officers, as well as private men.

The * Trumpeter is to sound the *call* to church, in the front of the main-guard, when the bell rings the second time.

R 3

Art.

* The Drummer is to beat the *call*, &c: *Drag. Regul.*

Art. 2. All Officers shall march to, and from church with their men, and are not to go out of church till the minister has quitted the pulpit; and to prevent any non-commissioned Officer, or private Man, from going out of church during the service, a non-commissioned Officer shall be posted at every door.

Where there is a Roman Catholic church in a garrison, the men who profess that religion must be sent to it, under the care of a non-commissioned Officer.

Art. 3. Soldiers guilty of behaving indecently, or irreverently, during divine service, are to be confined as soon as it is ended, and punished: They must be ordered to conduct themselves in a becoming manner, and to be, in general, devoutly attentive to the word of God, but particularly so to the prayers and the blessing.

N. B. When a garrison, consisting of a Troop, Squadron, or Regiment, is to go to the town-church, the commanding Officer must endeavour to get one particular part, large enough to contain the whole, assigned for their separate use; otherwise it will be impossible for him to govern their behaviour during the service.

Art. 4. No Trooper, or Dragoon, shall be ordered, the day on which he is to receive the holy sacrament, on guard, or any other duty that may fall to his turn; but must either get it performed before, or defer it till afterwards.

The communion must be administered every 14 Days in all garrisons; and the Captains are to take care, that their men go to receive it.

C H A P. II.

General Rules for the Conduct of Commandants in Garrisons.

Article 1.

THE Commandant in every garrison must be always on the parade at guard-mounting, to see that the whole mounts in good order, and that the men are clean, and well dressed; for such irregularities as he may observe, he is afterwards to reprimand the Captains in whose Troops, or Squadrons, they may happen, and enjoin them to review their men with more care before their quarters, and bring them to the parade in better order.

Art. 2. The commandant shall be answerable, that the entire duty of the garrison is always performed in a proper manner, and exactly according to the Directions given in these *Regulations*: He must be also careful to promote strict subordination amongst the Officers, and good Discipline amongst the non-commissioned Officers, and private men: and his Majesty depends upon them in a particular manner, for the executing of this order.

Art. 3. When a Commandant receives intelligence of any gypsies, thieves, or highwaymen, he is immediately to send out parties to apprehend

hend them, if possible, and confine them till further orders.

Art. 4. His Majesty having observed, that subordination has lately not been kept up with that strictness which he requires; it is, therefore, his command, that, for the future, it shall be enforced with the utmost severity, and without the least respect of person.

C H A P. III.

Of the Authority of Governors, and Commandants.

Article 1.

WHEN Cavalry and Infantry lie in garrison together, the commanding Officer of a Regiment shall not interfere with any part of the duty relating to the garrison, but shall be obedient to all the orders of the Governor and Commandant of it, although himself be a General in the army, and the Commandant a Colonel only.

Art. 2. The Governor and Commandant are entirely to give up the care and judicial Management of Regiments to their respective Generals and commanding Officers; nevertheless, no General, or commanding Officer, has a Power to release any Officer from confinement, or to punish any Soldier,

dier, without having first made a report thereof to them, by the Major of the Regiment.

N. B. Commanding Officers of Regiments, are permitted to punish non-commissioned Officers and Soldiers with the picket, wooden-horse, or tying neck and heels, for small crimes committed, contrary to some particular order of their own Regiment; and are only to make report thereof to the Governor and Commandant, after such prisoners have received their punishment, and are released again; but the nature of their crimes must be at the same time signified in such report.

Art. 3. When any Officer, non-commissioned Officer, or Soldier, in garrison, is guilty of a disobedience of the Governor's orders, the General, or commanding Officer of the Regiment to which the Officer or Soldier so offending belongs, can confine him, but not punish, without the Governor's leave.

Art. 4. No General, or commanding Officer of a Regiment in a garrison, shall assume any authority over the inhabitants, that being the sole province of the Governor or Commandant, unless it should become necessary, on some sudden occasion, to confine one, on account of any quarrel between him and the soldiers; or, when a soldier makes any just complaint against his landlord: Occurrences of this nature must be reported by the Adjutants to the Governor or Commandant, who has a discretionary power either to release or punish such inhabitant.

Art.

Art. 5. When a Regiment is to exercise the day following, to go through the firings, to bury, or to execute any soldier, to grant furloughs, to send out parties, or to perform any other duties of the like nature, the Major of the Day of such Regiment must inform the Governor, or Commandant thereof, the evening before at orderly time, in order to obtain his permission.

Art. 6. No Officer, though he may have business to prevent his attending the parade in the morning, and at orders in the evening, shall go out of the garrison, without leave obtained from the Governor or Commandant, much less lie a night out of it; and every Officer who disobeys this order, shall forfeit a month's pay to the invalid fund.

N. B. The general directions here given, concerning the authority of Governors and Commandants, are in like manner to take place in small garrisons; and the Commandants thereof are to be treated with equal deference and respect by all Officers under their command.

Art. 7. All persons, who pass in and out of the garrison, and are reported to the Officer commanding the main-guard, must be reported to the Governor, and the Commandant.

C H A P. IV.

The usual Guards in Garrisons, and
their Manner of Mounting.

Article 1.

DURING the time of year, when Regiments are assembled for exercising, a grand-guard shall be appointed, composed of 150 men, in every garrison containing a whole Regiment, with a proportionable number of Officers and non-commissioned Officers, under the command of a Field-Officer; which guard is to furnish a separate one, for every port belonging to the garrison.

The grand-guards are always to be relieved at nine o'clock in the morning; and, where there is a whole Regiment in a garrison, are to mount from the first of May, to the first of November.

N. B. As long as grand-guards continue to be posted, the main-guard is only to consist of a non-commissioned Officer, and six Men, and every port-guard of a lance-corporal and three.

Art. 2. The grand guards in all garrisons are to mount from the 1st of May to the 1st of September: where there are only one or two Squadrons in a garrison, the grand-guard is to be advanced before one of the ports, and a Lance-Corporal likewise with three men posted at every one.

In

In a garrison where there is one complete Squadron, one Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, and 20 Men, are to mount the grand-guard, and nine are to be furnished for the ports: but if uncomplete, one non-commissioned Officer and 12 Men are to compose it; it is to be posted by the commanding Officer, sometimes before one port, and sometimes before another, and to be governed in all respects by the preceding *Regulations* for field duty.

In a garrison where there is more than one Squadron, the strength of the grand-guard must be proportionably augmented.

N. B. The grand-guard is always to march back into the garrison at the *retreat*.

Art. 3. In winter-time, when there is no grand-guard, all the guards are to mount at eleven.

Every Troop of Horse, or Squadron of Dragoons, is to furnish one non-commissioned Officer and 12 Men for the guard, who are to assemble early enough at their Captains quarters, to be afterwards on the grand parade, at the time they were ordered.

The Captains, and subaltern Officers of Troops or Squadrons, are carefully to review their men, and to see that they are well dressed, and mount the guard always in the same good and complete order, as when his Majesty is present.

† *Art. 4.* When a whole Regiment of Horse is assembled together in a garrison, it shall furnish

a

† When a Regiment of Dragoons, consisting of 10 Squadrons, is in garrison together, two Captains and seven Subalterns,

a Captain and three subaltern Officers every day for the guard : where there is only one Troop, a non-commissioned Officer shall mount the guard : when there are two, a subaltern Officer shall mount : when there are three or four, two Subalterns shall mount : when there are five or six, a Captain shall march off the guard, and go the grand rounds, and two Subalterns mount : when there are seven or eight, a Captain and three Subalterns shall mount.

N. B. The Captain and subaltern Officers belonging to the guard, are to wait upon the Colonel, or commanding Officer, at the time the men assemble before their Captains' quarters, and all such orders as he may give relating to the guard, they are to deliver to the non-commissioned Officers.

Art. 5. A non-commissioned Officer is always to march the men for guard of his Troop, or Squadron, to the parade ; and when he gives the word of command, he is to stand about one pace advanced upon the right flank, facing to the left : when the rear-ranks close to the front, in order to march off, he is to post himself two paces before the center of the 1st division.

Art.

alterns, shall mount guard every day : when there are eight or nine Squadrons together, a Captain and six Subalterns are to mount : when there are six or seven, a Captain and five Subalterns are to mount : when there are four or five, a Captain and four Subalterns are to mount : when there are three, a Captain is to march off the guard, and to go the grand rounds, and three subalterns are to mount : when there are two, two Subalterns are to mount ; and when there is but one, one Subaltern is only to mount.

Art. 6. When the non-commissioned Officer has marched up to his ground on the parade, he makes his Men close their files, and order their arms.

After the whole have taken up their ground, and the guard is to be formed, the Officers post themselves in a rank entire, according to seniority, in the front, and draw their swords; after which the Adjutant gives the word of command to the whole, to shoulder their arms.

N. B. The Trumpeters, or Drummers, post themselves before the center of the line of Officers.

Art. 7. The parade being shouldered, the Adjutant gives the word,

*Face to the right !
March !*

upon which the non-commissioned Officers march to the front of the center, in the rear of the Officers, draw up according to files in a single rank, and face at once towards the Officers.

Art. 8. The Adjutant then gives the word, *Halt ! Front !* The guards are then to be told off, after which the Adjutant gives the word of command, as follows;

Officers and non-commissioned Officers, march to your posts !

the Officers having taken their posts,

*Rest your carbines !
Shoulder your carbines !*

Rear-

Rear-ranks close to the front!

March!

To the right wheel by divisions!

March!

after which every Officer and non-commissioned Officer takes his post in marching order.

N. B. At the word of command, *Officers and non-commissioned Officers march to your posts!* the Officers post themselves in the front of their divisions, the non-commissioned Officers in the front-rank, and the Trumpeter, or Drummers, upon the right flank.

Art. 9. The Captains must assemble the men for guard belonging to their respective Troops, or Squadrons, at their quarters, before they march to the grand parade, and see them perform some parts of the exercise, particularly the motions of making ready, in order to render them as quick, and expert in loading, as possible. The whole likewise, when formed on the grand parade, are to practise together the motions of making ready, in the same manner as they are performed by the Infantry.

Art. 10. All Officers and non-commissioned Officers, who are not on duty, shall be present at guard-mounting on their respective regimental parade, as well as on the grand parade, nor go away till the guard is entirely marched off; and the commanding Officers are strictly to promote the obedience of this order.

N. B. All the non-commissioned Officers, not belonging to the guard, shall draw up in a rank entire, in the front of the parade.

Art.

Art. 11. All guards are to keep the ordinary pace, in marching to their posts: the Officers and non-commissioned Officers must frequently look back on their divisions, to see that the men don't grow careless, that they keep silence, carry their arms well, and march with straight ranks, for the neglect of which themselves shall be answerable; and all Field-Officers are required to take care that these directions be observed.

N. B. When a Field-Officer sees any Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, marching his men in an irregular manner, he must order him to be immediately relieved and confined.

When a *march* is † sounded, the arms are to be carried shouldered, whether it rains or not.

Art 12. In a garrison where there is but one Troop of Horse, or Squadron of Dragoons, a main-guard only is to be mounted; the non-commissioned Officer commanding which, is to parade it at the Captain's quarters, and march from thence to relieve the old guard; after having done which, he is to detach a Lance Corporal and three men to every port; and likewise post one sentry at the Captain's quarters, one over the arms, and a third over the prisoners.

Art. 13. In a garrison where there are not less than three Troops of Horse, or two Squadrons of Dragoons, the guard is to mount in the same manner, as is before directed for a Regiment.

Art. 14. When Cavalry and Infantry are in garrison together, the Cavalry are only to mount
a re-

† When a march is beat, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

a regimental guard, which is to parade and form at the commanding Officer's quarters, and march from thence to relieve the old guard.

Art. 15. When Cavalry and Infantry lie in the same garrison in time of war, the Cavalry are to do their duty on horseback, and to form their guards on a separate parade.

N. B. The old guard when relieved, is to march back to the parade, † sounding the *troop*; and having taken up its ground, and returned swords, is to go to the right about by fours, and march to quarters.

Art. 16. Patrols must be sent out at break of day, and sun-set in all garrisons, both winter and summer, before the opening and shutting of the gates; which are to reconnoitre either the nearest woods, or villages, according as the garrison may be situated, in order to discover any parties of the enemy, which may lie concealed therein: at their return, the gates are to be either opened, or kept shut, according to the nature of their report.

N. B. During the time of year, when grand-guards mount, these patrols are to be furnished by them; but during the winter, by the main-guard, upon which occasions they are to saddle their horses.

In garrison, the guards are always to mount with their cuirasses, boots, and spurs on, and after they have relieved the old guards, are to ground their cuirasses, and lay their carbines over them.

The reliefs are to be marched without cuirasses.

S C H A P.

† — beating the *troop*, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

 C H A P. V.

Of the Dismounting of Guards.

Article 1.

THE Officer of the old guard is to order his men to rest their arms, and the † trumpeter to sound a *march*, when the new one approaches within the distance of about 40 paces: the Officer of the new guard draws it up three deep, opposite to the old, and makes his men rest their arms; after which the Officer who is to be relieved, delivers all the orders relating to his guard, to the Officer who comes to relieve him.

N. B. The necessary instructions for the mounting and relieving of grand guards, have been already given in Part V. of *Field-Duty*, to which the Officers on such duties are referred.

Art. 2. After the Officer of the old guard has delivered all the orders to the Officer of the new one, they both take their posts again, and give the word of command to their respective guards,

Shoulder your carbines!

Face to the right!

March!

The new guard then marches up to the ground on which the old one stood, and forms in one or two ranks, according to its strength; the old guard
marches

† — the Drummer to beat a *march*, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

marches off, and draws up in three ranks, opposite to the new one: When both guards have faced about, and stand fronting each other, the Officers give the word of command.

*Non-commissioned Officers and Lance-Corporals,
march forwards!*

after which they likewise deliver all their orders.

As soon as the new guard is numbered, the commanding Officer gives the word,

First number, march forwards!

upon which the non commissioned Officer, or Lance-corporal, is to march off the relief, and must be attentive, when the sentries are delivering their orders to one another, lest they should omit any part.

The guard is to remain with ordered arms, during the relieving of the sentries.

Art. 3. As soon as the sentries are relieved, and fallen into the guard, the commanding Officer orders the whole to shoulder their arms, and having completed the files, gives the word.

Rest your carbines!

Your carbines high in your right arms!

Rear-ranks close to the front!

March!

When the Officer of the old guard has trooped it off to the distance of about 100 paces from the new, he is to form it again, and after that to rest, to club, to go to the right about, and then to dismiss it.

The † Trumpeter is to sound the *Troop*, during the marching off the guard.

N. B. Non-commissioned Officers guards are likewise to be governed by these directions in mounting; excepting that such, as have no drum, are to club their arms, and to be dismissed upon the spot, as soon as they are relieved.

Particular care must be taken, when a guard is trooped off, that the men carry their arms well clubbed, and march properly, especially in passing through any street.

Art. 4. The new guard remains with rested arms, till the old one has marched to the distance of about forty paces, after which the new guard orders, and grounds; and the men go to the right about.

N. B. The Lance-Corporals that are posted at the ports, must be appointed from intelligent old soldiers; and the sentries are to be likewise such, as are most remarkable for a good appearance, and dexterity in handling their arms.

Old soldiers are to be planted sentries over the arms, and the recruits on the posts nearest to the guard, by which means the Officers will be able to have a constant eye upon their behaviour, and to give them occasionally such instructions as may be necessary.

All guards are to have pickets fixed for the arms.

Art. 5. A guard consisting of about forty men, must be formed in * two ranks, and told off in two divisions; and the Captain is to post himself at the head of the first.

A guard

† The Drummer is to beat the *troop*, &c: *Drag. Regul.*

* — In three ranks, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

A guard of about 18 men, is to be drawn up in two ranks, and if only commanded by a non-commissioned Officer, a Lance-Corporal must be posted in the center, between the two divisions.

A guard of about nine men is to be formed in a single rank, with a Lance-Corporal posted in the center.

N. B. On a non-commissioned Officer's guard, the non-commissioned Officer, when his guard goes under arms, is always to post himself on the right flank.

In good weather the arms must be grounded both day and night.

If an Officer's guard mounts with a Trumpeter, or Drummer, he is to take post before the center, in the rear of the Officer.

C H A P. VI.

Of Relieving Sentries, with Directions how they are to behave on their Posts.

Article 1.

WHEN a relief is composed of six sentries or more, a non-commissioned Officer must march it, and give the word of command at the relieving of the sentries in the same manner as has been directed in *Field-Duty*: when the sentries march out of the guard, and form the relief, every non-commission'd Officer or Lance-Corporal calls out his own numbers.

S 3

N. B.

N. B. A relief, composed of three men, is formed and marched off in one rank ; from four to eight in two ranks, and from nine to any greater number in three ranks.

Art. 2. The manner in which sentries are relieved, and how they are afterwards to fall into the guard again, has already been described in the chapter which treats of the relieving of sentries in *Field-Duty*, and all the directions there given, are strictly to be observed in Garrison.

However it is not unnecessary to remind the non-commission'd Officers and Lance-Corporals, not to march negligently with their reliefs, to give the word of command in a distinct and proper manner at the relieving of the sentries, and to make them perform their motions regularly.

N. B. The Lance-Corporals must have their drawn swords in their hands, and are frequently to look back, and to observe their reliefs as they march them along.

In rainy weather, the reliefs are to carry their arms secured, and the commanding Officer of the guard is to have it under arms when the reliefs turn out, and also when they return with the sentries relieved ; after which he is to complete, and size it afresh.

In rainy weather, the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, commanding a guard, orders the arms to be taken into the guard-room, and hung up, for which he gives the word of command, as follows ;

Rest your Carbines !

Poise your Carbines !

To the right about !

March !

Art.

Art. 3. The Lance Corporal posted at the gate on a port-guard, plants and relieves his own sentry: he must be ordered to suffer no non-commissioned Officer, or private Man to go out of the gate without a passport.

Art. 4. When the Lance-Corporal at the gate discovers any persons of distinction approaching, he must call out to the sentry posted over the arms, that the Officer, or non commissioned Officer, commanding the guard may come; after which, the Lance-Corporal, provided it be in time of peace, and the country is free from the plague, may suffer such persons to pass directly to the clerk of the port, where the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer of the guard is to be already present, in order to examine them, who they are; what are their names; what their profession, and in whose service; from whence they came, and to what place they are going; whether they intend to pass through the garrison, or to stay in it; and how long they propose to make that stay; what business they have in it, and where they are to lodge: afterwards, when the clerk of the port has searched them, the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer lets them pass, and must order his guard under arms, in case there shall happen to be any person amongst them, to whom that compliment is due.

N. B. When any persons wanting to pass, will not suffer themselves to be searched, the guard must be assisting to the clerk of the port in compelling them.

In time of peace, and when the country is free from the plague, persons of distinction must not be required to produce passes, but they are nevertheless

to be strictly examined, according to the directions above given.

During war-times and plagues, the Lance-Corporal must stop all persons, let them be who they will, at the barrier, especially in fortresses, unless they shall have sent some body before hand, to give intelligence of their coming; and the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer of the port-guard, must first examine them, and demand their passports; after which, provided he finds no reason to suspect them, they may be permitted to pass in.

Art. 5. When non commissioned Officers and private Men, or when any of the inferior sort of people want to come into the garrison, the sentry at the gate must bring them to the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer commanding the guard, and such non commissioned Officers and Soldiers must be afterwards sent to the main-guard; but the inferior sort of people, after they have been examined, and their passports found authentick, are to be suffered to pass, and the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, is to insert their names in the report-roll; but in case he has any grounds to suspect one or other of them, he must send him to the main-guard, and at the same time report his reasons for so doing.

N. B. The Lance-Corporal at the gate must suffer no beggars, or travelling Jews to come in, nor accept of any gratuity from persons wanting to come in, on pain of running the gantlope.

Art. 6. The Lance-Corporal at the gate must report all Officers who pass in and out, to the Officer of the guard, and the sentry is always to keep the barrier shut, and hold the chain in his hand.

N. B.

N. B. The sentry posted at the gate is always to stand with shouldered arms, and the Lance-Corporal with ordered.

Art. 7. Sentries must be always alert on their posts, and watchful to discover every thing that passes both by day and night; they are therefore not to keep in their boxes, unless it rains or snows very hard: if the badness of the weather obliges them to remain in them, they must nevertheless immediately turn out when they perceive any Officers, or persons of distinction approaching in the day-time, and the rounds and patrols, or any thing else, in the night: the holes in their boxes are not to be stopped up either by day or night, but always kept open, that the sentries may be able to observe every thing that passes, and the rounds and patrols must examine, and take care that they continually remain open.

N. B. Sentries, in good weather, must always carry their arms shouldered: in bad weather, they may secure them; but whenever they see an Officer advancing towards them, they must immediately shoulder them again.

Art. 8. Sentries must have nothing of business to do on their posts, must not lay their arms out of their hands, or sit down, on pain of running the gantlope; nor get drunk, sleep, or quit their posts before they are regularly relieved: They must also, in the night-time, have always challenged before any person can come within fifty paces off them, otherwise they are not alert on their posts, and must be confined the day following.

N. B.

N. B. After the *tatt-too*, no sentry or guard is to rest their arms, but to the rounds, or patrols.

Art. 9. Sentries, particularly those who are posted within the garrison, are not to smoke tobacco, nor to move beyond the distance of ten paces from their posts: When any Officers, guards, or persons of distinctions are advancing towards them, they are immediately to stand ready to face them, to shoulder their arms, and to rest in proper time to all such persons as are to be received with rested arms.

Art. 10. Sentries are to put a stop to all quarrels and noises happening near their posts, and to give information of them to the first Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, who passes by; yet they are, by no means, to go too far from their posts: In like manner, whenever they discover any fire, they must call out, and give the alarm.

Art. 11. Sentries are to take great care of all that is committed to their charge, to keep their posts clean, nor to suffer any thing about them to be destroyed or taken away, much less be guilty of doing it themselves; and when they are relieved, must deliver up all in proper order, on pain of running the gantlope ten times through the regimental parade.

Art. 12. The sentries posted on the arms must call out, and warn the guard in proper time, whenever they discover any persons advancing, to whom the guard is to turn out: After the *Tatt-too*, they are to challenge all people boldly, nor to suffer any one
to

to approach near the arms, before they have challenged, and called out a non-commissioned Officer of the guard to examine who he is, and what business he has with the guard.

N. B. When a sentry posted on the arms has challenged any person, who gives himself out for a Field-Officer, he must order him to stand, and then call out the guard; the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, as soon as his guard is turned out, orders them to shoulder their arms, and then examines the Field-Officer; after which, such Officer, in case he has any orders to give concerning the guard, or will go into the guard-house, must be permitted to pass.

Art. 13. The sentries posted on the arms, are to call out to the † Trumpeter of the guard, when it is the time to sound the retreat, or to boot and saddle; must challenge all patrols in proper time, and order them to stand, till they have called to the guard:

*Non-commissioned Officer, or, Lance-Corporal,
turn out!*

and till they are dispatched: they are in like manner to challenge the rounds in time, and order them to stand till they have called,

Turn out the guard!

and till they are afterwards dispatched.

Art. 14. The sentries posted over the prisoners, are not to suffer any one to go out, till they have

† — The Drummer of the guard, when it is the time to beat the Tatt-too, or Reveillé, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

have called to a non-commissioned Officer of the guard, who is to acquaint the Officer commanding the guard; after which one man with his arms must be ordered to attend him: They are likewise to prevent all noise and disturbance, nor to suffer any of the prisoners to get drunk, particularly such as are to be punished.

N. B. The sentries posted on the prisoners are to be answerable that, whatever punishment shall be severally ordered them, whether that of the picket, the wooden horse, the carrying of wood, or the being tied neck and heels, it be inflicted properly; and to suffer none to drink spirituous liquors, to smoke tobacco, to cry out, or make any noise, while they are receiving their punishments.

Art. 15. Sentries posted over goods of any kind, must suffer no persons to come near them, but the proprietors, and such as have real business with them,

N. B. That every man may know how to behave on his post, both by day and night, the commanding Officer of the guard must give directions for that purpose to every relief.

CHAP. VII.

Instructions to Officers on Guard.

Article 1.

THE Officer of the main-guard, as also of the port-guards, are always to employ capable and good soldiers to carry reports; on which occasions

sions they must be also careful to give them full instructions ; for if any soldier makes a wrong report, or does not know every particular which is necessary to be reported, the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, who sent him, shall be answerable.

N. B. When a soldier is carrying a report to the main-guard, and meets any Field-Officer in the streets, he must make the report to him, and afterwards proceed on his way to the main-guard.

Art. 2. Every Officer, or non-commissioned Officer commanding a guard, must, without any excuse to be admitted, have his men under arms, and their carbines rested in proper time, as often as any person passes, to whom that compliment is due; the Officer, therefore, or non-commissioned Officer, is not to suffer the men to remain constantly in the guard-house, nor to continue there himself, but to be frequently walking about in the front of the guard : All the men must keep either in, or before the guard-house, both day and night ; and every soldier who is not immediately at hand, when the guard is ordered under arms, shall be looked upon as one who has quitted his guard without leave, and punished accordingly.

Art. 3. When a soldier goes away from his guard without leave, he shall be confined, and the day following run the gantlope ten times through 150 Men ; the Officer, therefore, or non-commissioned Officer, commanding a guard, is frequently to order his men under arms, particularly in the night-time, and have the Roll called, to see if any one is wanting.

N. B.

N. B. The men are not to carry wood on their shoulders, but every guard shall have a wood-cart for that purpose.

Art. 4. Every Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, commanding a guard, must see that his men are always well dressed: As soon as to *boot and saddle is sounded in the morning, they must rise from the guard-bed, must wash and comb themselves, clean their boots, brush their hats and clothes, tighten their stocks, and put on their side-arms properly; afterwards, as soon as it is day, the commanding Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, must order them under arms, size them, and examine whether they have dressed themselves in a proper manner.

Art. 5. All guards are to grant leave of absence to a few men, at the time the horses are to be rubbed down every morning, and as often afterwards as they are to be fed; When they return to their respective guards, others are to be sent in their stead; and in such manner, that the horses may be always properly attended, and taken care of: but the main-guard is not, on any other account, to suffer more than two to be absent at a time; nor any inferior guard more than one, who must also join their guards again within half an hour. After the retreat, no man must be allowed to quit his guard, on any pretence whatsoever.

Art. 6. No Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, on a separate guard, shall leave it for a minute, either by day or night; to prevent, therefore,

* — The Reveille beats, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

fore, any necessity of doing it, they must send for their victuals; and every Officer who absents himself from his guard for half an hour, shall be confined in a fortress for the space of a year, and his pay deducted for the invalid fund.

N. B. No Officer on guard shall send for a mattress or night-gown, much less presume to undress himself, but must keep on all his clothes during the night.

No Officer must excuse any man his guard, and suffer him to go away, without an order from the Governor, or Commandant of the garrison.

Art. 7. A report must be given in every morning, by a non-commissioned Officer of the guard, to the Adjutant, who is afterwards to report to the commanding Officer, and to all the Field-Officers.

In a garrison where one, or more Squadrons lie, the Officer who commands the main-guard must make his report, by a non-commissioned Officer, to the commanding Officer of the whole.

Art. 8. A report must be made by all inferior guards, as soon as they are relieved, to the Captain, or Officer, commanding the main-guard; who is afterwards himself to deliver a general report to the commanding Officer, and another, by a non-commissioned Officer of his guard, to the Field-Officers.

C H A P. VIII.

Of giving out the Parole.

Article 1.

WHERE there is a Regiment in garrison, the General, or effective Colonel gives out the Parole to the Major of the day on the grand parade, immediately after guard-mounting, who brings it to the Commandant of the Regiment, and afterwards to the Adjutants, the Quarter-masters, and the non-commissioned Officers, and Lance-Corporals of the guard, during which four sentries from the main-guard are to be posted with rested arms, to prevent any but the proper persons from hearing the parole, and the orders.

N. B. In a garrison where there is no Officer of so high a rank as a Major, the eldest Captain is to give out the parole.

Art. 2. The Majors are required to take care, that all the Officers and non-commissioned Officers of their respective Regiments, who are not on duty, do attend at the giving out of the parole.

Art. 3. The Adjutants are to bring the parole to their Field-Officers; and the Quarter-masters to the Captains and subaltern Officers of their Troops or Squadrons, together with all the orders of the day.

Art.

Art. 4. The non-commissioned Officers and Lance-Corporals on guard, bring the parole to the Officers and non-commissioned Officers of their respective guard, together with the orders of the day. The Quarter-masters are not to bring the parole to any Officers on guard, unless it be the commanding Officer of the Troop, or Squadron, to which they belong.

Art. 5. In a garrison where one or two Squadrons lie, commanded by a Major, or Captain, he is himself to give out the parole to the Quarter-masters, and to the non-commissioned Officers, or Lance-Corporals of the guard.

N. B. When there are two Majors in the same garrison, the youngest is to receive the parole from the eldest, and give it out to the garrison.

When a Major comes into a garrison, where a Colonel, or Lieutenant-Colonel commands, and there is no Major belonging to it, he must receive and give out the parole, as long as he continues in it; because a Field-Officer not only takes command, according to his rank in the army, in his own garrison, but in all others, though not composed of the Regiment to which he belongs.

Art. 6. When cavalry and infantry lie together in the same garrison, the Majors belonging to both are to receive the parole from the Commandant together.

In a garrison composed of both Cavalry and Infantry, which is no fortified place, the eldest General, Colonel, or other Officer upon the spot, takes the command, and gives out the parole.

 CHAP. IX.

Of opening and shutting the Gates.

Article 1.

THE gates or barriers must be put to, as soon as it is dark, and the sentries begin to challenge; and the wickets are only to be kept open, to let foot-passengers in and out, till the gates are shut: but when any waggons are to be drove out or in, the Port-Officers are to have their men under arms, till they have passed, and the gates are shut again.

Art. 2. In time of war; the gates must be shut as soon as it is dark; and whenever a gate is to be opened afterwards, on account of the approach of any party of men, or otherwise, the guard posted there must first be reinforced from the main-guard, before they are to gain admittance; after which, the men to be ordered out on the occasion, are to march through the wicket before the gate is opened, and to remain without the barrier, till the party has passed through, and the gate is shut again.

Art. 3. As soon as the † Retreat is sounded, a non-commissioned Officer of the main-guard, with two men, and a third to carry the keys, must shut the gates; and the Officers, or non-commissioned
Officers

† As soon as the Tatt-too is beat, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

Officers commanding the port-guards, must see that they do it in a secure and proper manner.

Art. 4. When the non-commissioned Officer of the main-guard brings the keys, the port-guards are to receive them with shouldered arms, and to remain in that position till the gates are shut, and the keys carried back again.

Art. 5. All strangers, or persons belonging to the town, who have been on a journey, and want admittance in the night-time, are to be allowed it; and the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer of the port-guard, must immediately send a report to the main-guard, that a non-commissioned Officer may bring the keys, and the gate be opened.

N. B. The keys must be hung up before the gates on post-days, and at such other times when it is certainly known there will be occasion to open them, till the post, and the persons so expected shall arrive.

Art. 6. The gates are to be opened as soon as † to boot and saddle is sounded, and the port-guards, during the time of opening them, are to remain under arms.

N. B. At the opening and shutting of the gates, all the directions which have been given, in regard to the sending out patrols every morning and evening, are to be observed.

† — The Reveille is beat, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

CHAP. X.
Of Rounds and Patroles.

Article 1.

AN Officer, as he must be answerable for every thing which happens on his guard, is never to leave it for the space of half a quarter of an hour; the necessity of the service requires this punctuality, and for this reason, his Majesty has thought proper to give his orders in so peremptory and strict a manner in these *Regulations*, that no Officer, or non-commissioned Officer upon guard, may hereafter presume to absent himself from it.

Art. 2. When a Regiment is assembled together, at the time of year for exercising, the rounds are to go from one grand-guard to another, according to the instructions given in *Field-Duty*.

Art. 3. Where a Regiment is in garrison for a whole year, patroles of horse are to keep constantly going through the streets, during the whole night, in order to prevent all disorders.

Art. 4. When a whole Regiment is together in a garrison, the Major of the day must visit all guards, as soon as it is dark, in time of peace; and after the gates are shut, in time of war, and so go the first rounds: the commanding Officer of every guard is to give him the parole, together with

with all the orders of the day, and an account also of every thing relating to his guard: if the Major finds any irregularities on his rounds, that a guard is not alert, that any of the Men are absent, that the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer cannot give the proper parole, and does not know the orders of the day, or is, in any other respect whatever, deficient in his duty, he must report it, after he has received the usual report from the Captain of the main-guard after the *Retreat*, to the commanding Officer of the Regiment.

N. B. No Officer shall entertain people on his guard in the night-time, nor importune any friend, or other person, to pass the evening with him; but, on the contrary, must give himself up entirely, and without any sort of interruption, to the care of his men, and the performance of his duty.

Art. 5. When the † *Retreat* is sounded, and the gates are shut, the port-guards are to make a report to the Captain commanding the main-guard, who is afterwards to send a report of the whole by a non-commissioned Officer to the Major of the day, together with the report-roll; the Major afterwards makes a report of his rounds to the General, or commanding Officer of the Regiment, delivers the report-roll, and at the same time gives him an account of every thing that has passed, and of all the particulars reported to him from the Captain of the main-guard.

Art. 6. When one or two Troops of Horse, or Squadrons of Dragoons, lie in a garrison, the Officer commanding the main-guard is to visit the posts

T 3

† When the *Tatt-too* is beat, &c. *Drag. Regul.* when

when it is dark ; and after the *Retreat*, or *Tatt-too*, is to carry the parole to the commanding Officer, making, at the same time, a report of his rounds, and giving in the report-roll.

Art. 7. In a garrison composed of a whole Regiment, or of three, or more Troops of Horse, or Squadrons of Dragoons, an Officer off Duty, shall be given out in orders, for the night-rounds, and he must go at different hours : He is to go five times in the long nights, after the Major, or, in smaller garrisons, after the Officer commanding the main-guard, has gone his first rounds, and three in the short ones : They are also to be called visiting rounds, and to give the parole to every guard they visit.

N. B. As often as every Officer has gone his rounds, he must make a report to the Captain commanding the main-guard.

The Major of the Day, or the Captain, when they go their rounds, must take a non-commissioned Officer and two men from the main-guard ; the other Officers, when they go their rounds, are to take a non-commissioned Officer and two men from one guard to another ; but when they visit a guard, on which there is only one non-commissioned Officer, they must keep the former non-commissioned Officer till they come to a guard with two.

Art. 8. When the sentry at the guard discovers the rounds coming, he calls out the guard, which is immediately to fall under arms, after which the commanding Officer orders a non-commissioned Officer with two men to advance towards the rounds, who, as soon as he arrives within a proper distance,

i s

is to challenge, *Who comes there?* and when he is answered, *Rounds*, he is to demand further, *What Rounds?* After the rounds have made themselves known, he comes back to report it to the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, who then gives the word of command to his guard, *Rest your Carbines!* and calls out to the rounds, *Advance Rounds!* After which the Officer of the rounds, and the commanding Officer of the guard, having drawn their swords, hold the points against each other's breast, when the parole is given: the non-commissioned Officer, in the mean time, with the two men who examined the rounds, stands fast, to prevent the rounds from advancing nearer to the guard, and makes the two men rest their arms together with the guard, keeping them in that position till the parole is given, and the rounds are dispatched.

N. B. The rounds are also to rest their arms, together with the guard; and after the parole is given, the two men from the guard, and the rounds are to shoulder again: the non-commissioned Officer, with the two men, must then either fall into his guard, or march with the rounds to the next guard, in which case the former non-commissioned Officer and two men, who came with the rounds, are to march back to their respective guard; in doing which, they must visit every post, and pass for a patrol.

The guard must remain with rested arms, till the rounds are marched off.

The rounds are to be received in the same manner by non-commissioned Officers' guards, excepting that the non-commissioned Officer of a guard is to give the parole to the Officer of the rounds, in doing which, he is to hold the point of his sword against the Officer's breast.

When there is only one non-commissioned Officer on a guard, a Lance-Corporal must be ordered to advance with two men, to examine the rounds in the manner above directed; and the non-commissioned Officer is not to move from his post, when he dispatches the rounds.

Art. 9. When an Officer is ordered to go the Rounds, and does not perform every thing right, and according to such orders as he shall receive, for which the Captain, or commanding Officer of the main-guard shall be answerable, he shall be confined a year in a fortress, and his pay deducted for the invalid fund.

Every Officer also, or non-commissioned Officer, commanding a port-guard, must report all Officers who neglect going their rounds according to orders.

Art. 10. As soon as it is dark, and the sentries begin to challenge, patroles must be constantly sent to the right and left from one guard to another, the whole night through: When the patroles from the first guard are dispatched, they are to return to their guard, and the second guard must send out a patrole to the guard next to it; and this is to be continued from one guard to another, till the last patrole comes, and reports to the main-guard whether every thing was found in proper order.

N. B. Patroles must be sent every half hour from the main-guard, and are to visit every post to which they are to patrole, both going and coming back, and to report such sentries as were not alert on their posts.

The Patroles must go about in as short a time as
the

the Rounds ; as often as it happens otherwise, the Captain of the main-guard must inquire into the reason.

When Patroles or Rounds meet one another, those who challenge first are to demand the parole ; but when Rounds meet Patroles, the Patroles are always to give the parole to them : non-commissioned Officers are likewise to be sometimes sent out with Patroles, to keep the sentries more alert, because they are not so much in awe of the Lance-Corporals.

Art. 11. In order to be certain that the Patroles go regularly, and visit all the posts, every guard shall have a tally, and every tally must agree with that belonging to the main-guard : The main-guard tally must be always carried round, and the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer of every guard, as often as he is visited by a Patrole, must compare his tally with it, and draw a stroke on each of them with a pencil.

N. B. The Tallies must be sent every morning, together with the reports, to the main-guard, the Captain, or commanding Officer of which is to compare them with his own ; if the number of strokes drawn on every tally, answers to the number of patroles sent from the main-guard, and of strokes on the main-guard tally, the Patroles must have gone regularly ; if otherwise, the Captain must inquire into the reason, and report it.

Art. 12. When the Patroles approach a guard, the sentry over the arms challenges, and is answered, *Patrole !* after which he is to say, *Stand Patrole ! What Patrole ?* and having received answer, *Non-commissioned Officer's, or Lance Corporal's Patrole !* he must then call to the non-commissioned
ed

ed Officer, or Lance-Corporal of the guard to come out, who, together with one man of the guard, is to advance towards the Patrole, and challenge, *Who comes there?* and being answered *Patrole!* is to demand further, *What Patrole!* *Advance Patrole!* upon which the non-commissioned Officer, or Lance-Corporal of the Patrole, gives the parole, and reports whether all be well, during which the non-commissioned Officer, or Lance-Corporal of the guard, holds the point of his sword against his breast, and the one man rests his carbine: After the parole is given, the non-commissioned Officer, or Lance-Corporal, demands his tally, and carries it to the Officer, or non-commissioned Officer commanding the guard, and at the same time reports whether all be well: after the Officer of the guard has drawn a stroke on the tally, the non-commissioned Officer, or Lance-Corporal of the Patrole takes it again, and marches back to his guard, visiting all the sentries, as he returns: Immediately after this Patrole is dispatched, another is again sent to the next guard, and so on, every Patrole observing the directions already given.

Art. 13. Every guard must send out Patroles after the *Retreat*, to inspect the publick-houses, who are at the first time to turn out all persons drinking, particularly private soldiers, and send them away to their quarters; but all such soldiers as they shall find the second time, either in publick-houses, or in the streets, they are to take prisoners.

N. B.

N. B. In all garrisons, certain districts must be assigned for every guard, in which they are to keep Patroles constantly going from eight o'clock to eleven; which patroles are to consist of a non-commissioned Officer and two men.

When these Patroles don't take all the soldiers prisoners whom they find after the *Retreat*, and the commanding Officer discovers that they were out of their quarters at that time, the non-commissioned Officer of that Patrole shall be confined, and reduced to a private centinel for two months, especially if such soldiers were guilty of any irregularities out of their quarters.

Art. 14. From the middle of September to the middle of March, every guard shall sound the † *Retreat* about eight o'clock; the time of doing it, during the other months of the year must depend on the weather; but it is usually about, or between the hours of nine and ten.

Art. 15. Immediately after the * *Retreat* at night, and to boot and saddle in the morning, a non-commissioned Officer of a Troop or Squadron must visit the quarters, deliver to every man the orders given out at orderly time, together with all others, which the Captain may have thought proper to give relating to his Troop, or Squadron: Every non-commissioned Officer, who visits his quarters in a negligent, irregular manner, shall be reduced to a private centinel for three months.

C H A P.

† — Shall beat the *Tatt-too*, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

* — The *Tatt-too* at night, and the *Reveille* in the morning, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

C H A P. XI.

Directions to be observed in a Garrison,
in case of Fire.*Article 1.*

WHEN an alarm happens in a garrison, on the account of fire, or otherwise, the Troops of Horse, or Squadrons of Dragoons, are instantly to repair to their respective alarm-posts, with their entire clothing, their arms, accoutrements, and every thing belonging to them.

N. B. From the first moment of the alarm, the whole garrison must be assembled on horseback, at their respective alarm-posts, in twenty minutes; on which account the Officers are required to exercise their men with great diligence, in order to render them, as quick and expert at saddling their horses as possible.

Art. 2. When a fire breaks out in a garrison, the guard which shall first discover it, must immediately send a non-commissioned Officer with two men, to see if it be dangerous; and if it appears to be so, the non-commissioned Officer is directly to send one of his men to report it to the main-guard; upon which the commanding Officer orders the * Trumpeter to sound *to arms*.

N. B. As soon as the * Trumpeter of the main-guard sounds

* — The Drummer to beat *to arms*, *Drag. Regul.*

sounds to arms, those belonging to all other guards, and those also who are off duty, are to do the same.

The Officer of the main-guard must immediately send a man to the commanding Officer to report the fire; and at the same time to inform him, that the guards have already given the alarm.

Art. 3. When a fire happens, the men on guard must be sent to their quarters, to secure their horses; but one sentry must be left at every port, and the gates be kept shut.

N. B. The keys which lock up the fire-engines are to be kept at the main-guard, the commanding Officer of which is to send a non-commissioned Officer and some men, to draw the engines to the place where the fire happens, till the inhabitants are assembled there, after which the non-commissioned Officer is to return with his men to the guard.

Art. 4. As soon as the Troops, or Squadrons, are assembled at their alarm-posts, they must be drawn up, and the rolls called; after which they must dismount, link their horses, and march clear of them on foot: The commanding Officer is then to send as many men as may be necessary, to assist in extinguishing the fire; and if they find the number of inhabitants on the spot to be sufficient without them, they are to return to their alarm-post.

N. B. A proper number of men must be left behind, to take care of the horses.

Art. 5. The commanding Officer in a garrison, must, with the advice and concurrence of the magistrates, establish some good rules amongst the
the

the inhabitants, that when a fire happens, every profession may know its province, and all interruption consequently be the better prevented. If the inhabitants are too long in coming to a fire, they shall pay four groshes to every soldier who is employed in extinguishing it in their stead; and the commanding Officer shall moreover correct them for such negligence.

Art. 6. When a soldier is not at his alarm-post in proper time, he shall be put prisoner, and run the gantlope the day following: the Officers and non-commissioned Officers are required to be the first at their alarm-posts, and not set bad examples to their men by coming late; but if an Officer is altogether absent, he shall be confined a year in a fortrefs, and his pay deducted for the invalid fund; if a non-commissioned Officer, he shall be ordered to do centinel's duty for a year; and if a private man, he shall run the gantlope 20 times.

N. B. Every soldier must bring all the clothes, accoutrements, or other things belonging to such of his comrades as are on guard, or sick, along with him to the alarm-post.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of Military Honours.

Article 1.

WHEN his Majesty halts only for a night in a garrison, no separate guard is to mount at his quarters, without his express order for it; but two sentries are only to be posted before the house, and two non-commissioned Officers before his chamber, which are to be furnished by the main-guard.

N. B. An orderly non-commissioned Officer shall be ordered to attend his Majesty as soon as he arrives at his quarters.

Art. 2. All guards ought to sound, or beat a *march* to the king, and the Officers to salute; but as it is his Majesty's pleasure, that the proper honours shall not be paid to him, neither the one nor the other must be done; and the guards are to receive him with rested arms only.

Art. 3. When his Majesty's brothers arrive in a garrison, the guards are to sound, or beat a *march* to them, and the Officers to salute, if they will permit it; otherwise they are only to be received with rested arms. When they halt in a town, two sentries are to be posted at their quarters.

Art.

Art. 4. When the * sovereign Margraves arrive in a garrison, the guards are to sound, or beat a *march* to them, the Officers to salute, and two Grenadiers to be posted sentries before their quarters. The honours due to the young Margraves depend upon their rank in the army; and such of them as are not in the army, are only to be received with rested arms, and to have one sentry posted at their quarters.

Art. 5. When a reigning prince of the empire passes through a garrison, the guards are to sound or beat a *march* to him, the Officers to salute, and two sentries to be posted at his quarters. To a prince of the empire, who is not in the army, no honours are due from guards, except the posting of one sentry at his quarters, but to one who is in the army, the honours due to him from his rank must be paid by all guards.

Art. 6. When a Field-Marshal in his Majesty's service arrives in a garrison, the guards are to sound, or beat a *march*, and the Officers to salute, but if his Majesty is present, the Field-Marshal is not to be saluted: Guards must pay the same compliments to General Officers in garrison, which they do in camp.

Art. 7. In a garrison consisting of one Regiment, all guards are to rest their arms to the Colonel, or commanding Officer; to any other Field Officer, the main-guard is to shoulder, and all other guards to rest.

N. B.

* This is a title belonging to the several branches of the house of Brandenburg.

N. B. To other Officers, non-commissioned Officers' guards stand by their arms, and the sentries rest to a Captain, but to the subaltern Officers stand shouldered only.

Art. 8. When a Regiment of Cavalry and Infantry lie in a garrison together, the main-guard shoulders their arms to a Colonel, and all the other guards rest: to any inferior Field-Officer, the main-guard only stands by their arms, but the port-guards are to shoulder, and all guards commanded by non-commissioned Officers, to rest.

N. B. All sentries are to rest to all Field-Officers.

Art. 9. In a garrison consisting of one, or more Troops, or Squadrons, the guards rest their arms to the Captain who commands, to every other, the non-commissioned Officers' guards are to turn out with shouldered arms, and to stand by their arms to the subalterns.

Art. 10. The same honours must be paid to all Field-Officers, who are in his Majesty's service, when they come into a garrison, as to those who belong to a Regiment in the garrison: But when any General- or Field-Officers, who are out of the service, come into a garrison, they are to be taken no notice of by the guards.

N. B. The same honours must be paid to foreign Generals, who are actually in service, as to the Generals in his Majesty's service; but none of any kind are to be paid to foreign Colonels, or other Field-Officers.

Art. 11. With respect to sentries, they must be posted in garrisons after the same manner as they are in camp, excepting that the commanding Officers of Regiments, are to have one sentry posted at their quarters, but no other Field Officers are to have any.

Art. 12. When a guard has turned out to a General Officer, and he gives them a signal, they are then not to march to their arms, but to draw up in the rear of them: if the guard has already shouldered, before the General gives a signal, they must then remain under arms, and rest, but not sound a Trumpet, or beat a Drum, unless he should order them to ground: on the contrary, when the guard has shouldered to a Field Officer, and he gives them a signal, the commanding Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, is to make them ground their arms, and draw them up in the rear of them.

Art. 13. As soon as it is dark, and the sentries have begun to challenge, the guards are neither to rest their arms to his Majesty, nor to any General Officer, but to carry them shouldered.

N. B. No non-commissioned Officer under arms must take his hat off to any person whatsoever; nor is any soldier, on pain of running the gantlope, to take his hat off when he has his arms in his hand.

CHAP.

C H A P. XIII.

Of Punishments and Executions.

Article 1.

WHEN a soldier is sentenced to run the gant-lope in a garrison, he must always do it through the parade at guard-mounting: if the parade is too strong, the supernumeraries must be taken off from the left; or if too weak, extraordinary added, which depends on the numbers through which he is to run.

Art. 2. After the usual guard is formed, the extraordinary party ordered on account of the punishment, faces to the right, and the guard to the left: at the word, *March!* the party, with commissioned and non-commissioned Officers, marches to the right flank of the guard; as soon as the word, *Front!* is given, the Adjutant dresses the files of the guard, and tells off the divisions: the eldest Officer of the party dresses also his files, and posts the Officers and non-commissioned Officers.

N. B. The left file of the party must close to the right file of the guard.

Art. 3. The Officers and non-commissioned Officers of the party, are to be attentive to the Adjutant, and to march to their posts, together with the Officers and non-commissioned Officers

of the guard, when he gives the word of command for it.

Art. 4. When the whole parade is formed, the Major gives the words of command,

Rest your carbines!

Shoulder your carbines!

Rear rank, to the right double your ranks!

March!

on which the rear rank steps up briskly, and together, to the right of their file-leaders; after which the center must move up so close to the front, as only to leave the proper interval for the prisoner to run the gantlope through.

N. B. When the Major gives the word, *March!* the rear-ranks must step off at once with the left foot, and fall nimbly into their places; must carry their arms well, let their right hands hang motionless down, keep silence, stand steady, and dress to the right.

The non-commissioned Officers posted in the rear of the divisions, must move up to proper distance from the center rank, when the rear-rank doubles.

Art. 5. When the rear rank has doubled after the manner above explained, the Major gives the words of command,

Front rank, face to the right about!

Order your carbines!

Bring your carbines to your left sides!

This word of command is performed at three motions, as follows:

1. Seize

1. Seize the carbine with your left hand, and hold it in a perpendicular line with both hands.
2. Bring the carbine nimbly to your left side, and hold it right up and down in a line with the point of your left foot.
3. Plant the but-end at once, with a strong motion, on the ground; at the same time throw your right-hand briskly back, and let it hang down your right side.

N. B. As soon as the front rank has faced to the right-about, the center is immediately to cast their eyes to the left; and as soon as the whole parade have brought their arms to their left sides, the center-rank must cast their eyes to the right again.

Art. 6. The Officers are to go to the right-about, together with the front-rank: a Captain and one Officer take post on the right flank, and two Officers on the left flank also; the rest of the Officers march through, come about at once to their proper front, and are to see that the men lay on properly.

N. B. The Trumpeters of Horse, or Drummers of Dragoons, post themselves on the right and left flank.

Art. 7. As soon as the parade is formed, the provost marches through with the twigs, and every man takes as many as there are prisoners to be punished. after the provost has marched through, the † Trumpeters sound the signal, on which the

G 3

pri-

† — The Drummers beat a ruffle, &c. *Drag. Regul.*

prisoner runs the gantlope, and the Major rides up and down to see that the men lay on properly.

N. B. When a prisoner runs the gantlope, a non-commissioned Officer is always to march before him, and the Trumpeters are to continue sounding while he receives his punishment.

Art. 8. When the prisoner has got through, the Major gives the following words of command,

Throw away your twigs !

Order your carbines !

upon which the center-rank cast their eyes at once to the left, and, as soon as they have ordered their arms, to the right again.

The preceding word of command is performed at the three following motions ;

1. Seize the carbine briskly with your right hand, and hold it in a perpendicular line.
2. Bring the carbine with both hands right up and down in a line with your right foot, so high that the muzzle may come in a line with your hat.
3. Order the carbine in the usual manner.

Art. 9. The Major then gives the word of command, as follows,

Shoulder your carbines !

Front rank, to the left about as you were !

Rear rank, face to the right about !

March !

Front !

Front!

Dress!

N. B. At the word, *Shoulder your carbines!* the Officers are to march into the front; and when the rear rank goes to the right about, be at their former posts.

Art. 10. As soon as the parade is formed three deep again, and stands steady and well dressed, the Major gives the word to the party.

Rest your carbines!

Club your carbines!

To the right-about!

March!

the party is thus dismissed, after which the guard is marched off.

N. B. When the parade is to be formed in the usual order, for a soldier to run the gantlope, all the Officers must divide themselves on the front; and the non-commissioned Officers are to stand steady in a rank entire in the rear of their Troops, or Squadrons, and to see that the punishment is properly inflicted.

Art. 12. When a man is to be punished with death, and the execution to be performed without the garrison, a detachment of 200 Men from the Regiment he belongs to, must be ordered on the occasion, which is to be paraded before the commanding Officer's quarters, and formed in eight divisions: after which the Major gives them the word to march off, which they are to do with shouldered arms, and without sound of trumpet,

or beat of drum, to the place of execution, where he is to form them into a circle.

N. B. A parade consisting of 200 men, or about that number, is to march in eight divisions; a parade of about 150, in six; and one of about 100, in four. Parades must never be told off in an odd number of divisions, but always in two, four, six, or eight.

Art. 12. An Officer must be sent for the prisoner, with such a number of men as may be thought necessary to prevent his rescue or escape, who are to march with him in the center to the place of execution, and deliver him up in the circle.

N. B. As soon as the Officer has delivered the prisoner in the circle, he must fall into the execution-party, and also march back again into quarters in the same body.

The men are to rest their arms while the sentence is reading, and after that to shoulder again; in which position they are to remain till the execution is performed.

Art. 13. After the execution is performed, the Major gives the word of command to the circle, to go to the right about, to wheel to the right and left, to come about to their proper front again, and the rear-ranks to open backwards to their former distance; after which he is to march the whole back again with shouldered arms, and without sound of trumpet, or beat of drum, to the Colonel's, or commanding Officer's quarters, where he makes them rest their carbines, club, go to the right-about, and then dismisses them.

N. B.

N. B. The Major is to have his sword drawn, when he marches the execution party out, and back again.

Art. 14. When the execution is to be performed within the garrison, the strength of the execution party must be proportioned to the size of the town, and the danger there may be of any insurrection.

N. B. When the criminal is no soldier, the inhabitants must be ordered to conduct him to the place of execution, where they are to deliver him up in the circle, after which all the directions already given are to be observed.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Burial of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men.

Article 1.

THE funeral of a Field-Marshal, who is effective in his Majesty's service, shall be saluted with three rounds of 12 cannon with whole loading, and attended by three battalions, and four squadrons.

That of a General of the Horse shall be saluted with three rounds of nine cannon, and attended by three Squadrons.

That of a Lieutenant-General shall be saluted with three rounds of six cannon, and attended by two Squadrons.

That

That of a Major-General shall be saluted by three rounds of three cannon, and attended by one Squadron.

That of a Colonel shall be attended by one Squadron.

That of a Lieutenant-Colonel by 100 men on horseback, with a proportionable number of commissioned and non-commissioned Officers, under the command of a Major.

That of a Major by one Captain, with 80 men on horseback, and a proportionable number of Officers.

That of a Captain, by one Captain, with 60 men on horseback, and a proportionable number of Officers.

That of a subaltern Officer, by one Lieutenant, one Cornet, and 30 men on horseback.

That of a non-commissioned Officer, by one non-commissioned Officer, and 20 men on foot.

That of a private man, by one Corporal, and 16 men on foot.

The following directions, in regard to funerals, are also to be observed.

Art. 2. The Squadrons, or funeral-parties are formed before the commanding Officer's quarters, from whence they are to march without drawn swords, sound of trumpet, or beat of drum, to the house in which the corps lies.

Art. 3. When the corps is brought out, the commanding Officer makes the party draw their swords; after which, and as soon as it is placed on the bier, or other carriage without the house, he makes them reverse their swords, and marches them

them off, the * Trumpeters sounding the *dead march*.

Art. 4. When the funeral-party has marched up to the church, or church-yard, where the body is to be interred, the trumpets, or drums, are to cease, and, as soon as it is put into the grave, the commanding Officer makes the party return their swords, unsling their carbines, and bring them before them: afterwards, when the burial service is ended, and the body interred, they are to fire three vollies, with their pieces presented in the air.

Art. 5. After the men have fired the three vollies, the Officer makes them return their carbines, and draw their swords again; after which he marches them back to the commanding Officer's quarters, with the trumpeters, or drummers, at the head of the first division: as soon as the party arrives at the commanding Officer's quarters, the trumpets, or drums, cease, and the Officer orders them to return their swords, to go to the right about, and march to their quarters.

N. B. When a funeral-party passes by a guard, the guard is to rest their arms.

Art. 6. When a party is ordered on foot, for the funeral of a non-commissioned Officer, or private man, it must be composed of a detachment from all the Squadrons, paraded at the commanding Officer's quarters, and marched from thence, with

* ----- The Drummers beating the *dead march*. *Drag. Regul.*

with shouldered arms, to the house in which the corps lies, where they are to order their arms.

Art. 7. The men are to shoulder their carbines a little before the corps is brought out, that they may be in readiness to receive it with rested arms; after which, and as soon as it is placed on the bier, or other carriage without the house, the non-commissioned Officer makes them reverse their carbines, and marches them off in the usual manner, the * Trumpeter founding the *dead march*.

Art. 8. When the funeral-party has marched up to the church-yard, the trumpet, or drum, ceases, and the non-commissioned Officer makes the men rest their carbines, till the body is put into its grave; after which, he orders them to shoulder, and keeps them in that position till it is interred; after which they are to fire three vollies over it, with their pieces presented in the air.

N. B. As soon as the men have fired the third volley, they step up with the right foot, placing it in a line by the left, carry their arms before them, half-cock, shut their pans, place their hands under the buts, and, casting their eyes to the right, shoulder together.

Art. 9. After the men have fired the three vollies in the manner above described, the non-commissioned Officer gives the word of command,

Rest your carbines!

Carry your carbines high in your right arms!

which

* ---- The Drummer beating the *dead march*. *Drag. Regul.*

which being done, he marches them off, the trumpet sounding, or drum beating, till he arrives at the commanding Officer's quarters, where he orders the men to rest their carbines, to club, to go to the right about, and then dismisses them.

Art. 10. All Officers attending the funerals of even their nearest relations, shall notwithstanding wear their entire Regimentals, and only tie a piece of black crape round their arm: Officers also who die in the service, shall be put into their coffins with their Regimentals on.

N. B. A non-commissioned Officer's corps shall be followed to the grave by non-commissioned Officers; and a private man's, by the private men of the Troop or Squadron to which he belonged.

Soldiers wives, or children, who die, are to be carried to the place of interment, either by the inhabitants, or on carriages, and not by soldiers; neither shall any be suffered to follow them.

CHAP. XV.

Regiments to be always in Readiness to take the Field at twelve Days Notice.

ALL Regiments shall hold themselves constantly in readiness to march, and take the Field at twelve days notice: during the twelve days, the absentees must be sent for, and the Officers

fficers provide horses, together with all other camp-necessaries of every kind whatsoever, which shall be wanting, either for themselves or their men; that when they receive the last orders to march, there may not be the least deficiency, exclusive of horses, but every thing be found in complete and good condition.

CHAP. XVI.

The Ceremony of nailing on, and swearing to the new Standards.

Article 1.

WHEN a Regiment receives new standards, they must be nailed on, in the General's, or commanding Officer's quarters, and all the Officers, with one Quarter-master, one Standard-bearer, one Corporal, and 10 Men per Company, are to attend the ceremony.

Art. 2. The day after the standards are nailed on, the whole Regiment is to march out by Troops or Squadrons, on foot, to a place appointed, where, as soon as they arrive, and are drawn up together, the Major, posting himself opposite to the center, orders them to shoulder their arms, and the standards to march to their respective Troops, or Squadrons, after which he gives the word of command,

From

From the right and left wheel inwards and form the circle!

N. B. The Officers stand on the front of their Troops or Squadrons, the Standards on the center, and the Trumpeters or Drummers in the rear; and because the new Standards have not yet been sworn to, no honours are to be paid to them, when they are brought out of the commanding Officer's quarters, and carried to the rendezvous.

The Standards are not to be folded up, but to be kept flying.

Art. 3. As soon as the circle is formed, the Major makes them rest their arms, and the solicitor is to make a short harangue, and read the *articles of war*; after which the Major gives the word of command,

Order your carbines!

the Chaplain then says a prayer, imploring God, out of his grace and goodness, to save every soldier from being perjured, and so to govern him, that, on all occasions, in battles, sieges, and engagements of every kind, he may continue firm to his standards, and maintain them against an enemy to the last drop of his blood. When the prayer is ended, the Major gives the word of command,

Bring your carbines to your left sides!

after which all the Officers and Soldiers lift up their fingers, and swear to the standards.

Art.

Art. 4. When the Regiment has sworn to the standards, every Captain must exhort his Troop, or Squadron, to keep inviolably the oath they have taken, after which the Major gives the word of command,

Order your carbines !

Shoulder your carbines !

The whole Regiment face to the right about !

March !

every Troop, or Squadron, moves back to its former ground, after which the Regiment marches back into quarters again.

Art. 5. The Regiment having marched back into quarters, the old standards must be carried, either on the same, or the following day, by the five standard-bearers, to the nearest arsenal, attended by one Officer, two non-commissioned Officers, one Trumpeter or Drummer, and 20 private men, and there deposited.

N. B. The usual honours must be paid to the old standards, till they are lodged in the arsenal; and when they march out of a garrison, and into night-quarters; or into the fortress, wherein such arsenal is, the men are to draw their swords, and to march in, without sound of trumpet, or beat of drum.

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Choice of Surgeons, the Care of the Sick in Garrison, and the Preservation of the Soldiery in general.

Article 1.

NO Surgeon-Major shall be taken into the army, till he has been presented to the Surgeon-General, and examined by the professors of the College of Physicians and Surgeons, that his Majesty may be assured, there is no Surgeon-Major appointed to any Regiment, who has not acquired a proper experience and understanding of all kinds of diseases; to certify which, the professors, after he has been examined, are to give him an attestation, setting forth his abilities; and if it appears from thence, that he is properly qualified, the Solicitor is then to administer to him the oath of allegiance, in the presence of the commanding Officer.

Art. 2. The Mates belonging to every Regiment, shall be appointed, subsisted, and dismissed by the Surgeon Major, and be also subject to his authority: they are likewise to swear allegiance to the Regiment for the space of time which their contract with the Surgeon-Major is to last; that they will serve faithfully, attend the sick and

X

wound-

wounded diligently, and submit altogether to the subordination of the Regiment.

Art. 3. The Surgeon-Major shall be answerable that he admits no Mates, but such as are capable of the employment; and particularly careful to appoint those only to Squadrons which lie alone in a garrison, who are well skilled in all kinds of disorders: in like manner, when a command is sent out, the same caution is to be observed: such sick men as labour under dangerous and chronical diseases must, if practicable, be removed to the head-quarters, where the Surgeon-Major is: Every Captain must remain satisfied with his Mate, provided that his Troop, or Squadron is shaved at the proper time, that his sick and wounded are taken good care of, that he keeps himself in due subordination, and does his duty diligently; in default of which, he must be reported to the commanding Officer of the Regiment, and to the Surgeon-Major, in order to be punished.

N. B. When a Troop, or Squadron, has a great many sick, the Surgeon-Major must attend it in person.

Art. 4. In every garrison, care must be taken to provide a particular house, by way of hospital.

Art. 5. In an hospital for a whole Regiment, one good Mate shall always remain, but particularly in the night-time, together with two servants, who are to take all possible pains during their attendance, as well in giving the sick their medicines properly, as their victuals, or doing any other

other service equally necessary: Every day also an Officer, and sometimes a Field-Officer, must visit the hospital, to examine into the real state of every thing: the Surgeon-Major is in a particular manner required to attend the sick diligently, to give them the proper medicines regularly, and to order also such food and liquors as are most suitable to their different disorders.

Art. 6. When any dangerous disease breaks out in a garrison, the Surgeon Major, and more especially the Mates in his absence, must consult with the physician, if there happens to be one in the town, in order to put a stop to it, if possible, in its infancy, and to prevent its spreading; to contribute to which every sick person in an hospital, seized with any infectious disorder, must be immediately removed.

N. B. When a Captain employs a Doctor, or any other person out of the Regiment, to cure a sick man, the Surgeon-Major shall not be obliged to furnish the medicines.

As it is unwholsome for a man to come suddenly out of a hot room into the cold air, so the fires in guard-rooms, and in quarters, shall not be made too large.

Art. 7. Since diseases may be prevented from becoming epidemical, if they are not too long concealed; so the soldiers must be in general encouraged, whenever they shall find themselves out of order, to discover it early; but as some men are unwilling to be sent to the hospital, till the increase of their disorder renders it unavoidable; so the Captains, and all the Officers must carefully

observe the looks of their men, and must send every one who appears to be not well, whether he will, or not, to the hospital, that the Surgeon-Major may examine into the state of his health in proper time.

N. B. No Officer, non-commissioned Officer, or Soldier, before a march, or at the time of exercising in the spring, shall, by way of prevention, physic himself without the surgeon's knowledge and approbation.

Art. 8. The Men are not to be permitted, during the season for fruit, to squander away their money upon it, and throw themselves into distempers; those sorts of fruit are more particularly to be prohibited, which are accounted the most hurtful; the soldiers should be induced to avoid them, even out of regard to themselves, for such as are prudent enough to lay out the money on bread, which others spend on fruit, find their advantage in point of health.

Art. 9. It is further necessary, in order to prevent the men as much as possible from throwing themselves into disorders, and of becoming incapable of doing their duty, or from dying, to forbid excessive drinking, and especially of spirituous liquors; as nothing likewise is more prejudicial than for a man to drink when he is hot, so the Officers are by no means to suffer their men to drink on a march in hot weather: for the same reason, the Troops, or Squadrons, after they have been performing their exercise on foot, must be detained for some time under arms, before they are dismissed: a general order ought also to be
given,

given, to restrain the men from drinking too soon after all violent exercises.

Art. 10. Directions for the sick to have good broths made, and to be well taken care of; and for the soldiers in general to keep a good mess, and to boil the pot once a day, have been already given in the 5th Part; and the Officers are once more strictly required to see, that the same regularity, and good management, prevails constantly.

C H A P. XVIII.

Instructions concerning the Care and Management of the Horses.

Article 1.

THE Officers must study, as much as possible, to make their men contract a regard for their horses, in consequence of which, the attendance upon them will become a pleasure, and, being well taken care of, they will thereby be rendered capable of more service on a march. It is likewise his Majesty's command, that they be exercised in trotting, and galloping every day; which, so far from doing them any harm, is what will rather contribute to their preservation: the Officers are also to be conversant amongst the men, in order to render their persons reciprocally familiar to one another.

Art. 2. Every Captain, together with his Officers, and non commissioned Officers, must take all possible care, to keep the horses of his Troop, or Squadron, in good order, he must himself therefore visit them frequently, as well as require the same diligence from his subordinate Officers.

The Subalterns to every Troop, or Squadron, are to visit their respective districts every day, the quarters being told off in separate divisions for that purpose, and see after what manner the men attend, and dress their horses, making a report afterwards to the Captain, whether they are properly taken care of, and whether any are sick.

Art. 3. The non-commissioned Officers to every Troop, or Squadron, must be severally appointed to inspect particular districts, which they are to do immediately after the *Retreat*: when they find that any man is absent from his horse, has neglected to fodder, or take proper care of him, they must confine him, and are to make a report to their Captain, an hour after the *Retreat*.

Art. 4. The non-commissioned Officers are also to visit their respective districts every morning at seven o'clock, and make strict examination, whether all the horses are well fed and attended, and whether any are sick, of which they must make a report to their Captain: after the non-commissioned Officers have made their report, the Officers are frequently to visit the quarters, and when they find, that any non-commissioned Officer has been negligent in his inspection, or irregular in his report, he shall be confined, and tied neck and heels for four days.

Art.

Art. 5. Although his Majesty hopes, that no Officer will omit any part of his duty, and neglect to visit, and review the horses properly, nevertheless if any one should be guilty of such remissness, and consequently of having afterwards made a false report to his Captain, he shall be confined 14 days on the main-guard; and for his second offence of this kind, a month: the Captain, therefore, to prevent any such imposition, is not to depend altogether upon the reports of the Subalterns, much less on those of the non-commissioned Officers, but must review the horses himself every other day at least.

Art. 6. The Officers, and non-commissioned Officers, when they visit their quarters, are strictly to inquire, whether the men make a proper use of all the forage which is daily allowed for their horses; and any one who is discovered to have diminished, and sold any part of it, shall be immediately confined, and run the gantlope 12 times through 200 men.

Art. 7. Every man shall supply his horse with the usual quantity of hay, at five, eight, and 12 o'clock in the morning, and at four and eight in the afternoon; and shall water him in the morning, at noon, and in the evening.

The men must be taught by the Officers and non-commissioned Officers in what manner they are to fodder and water their horses.

Art. 8. When a horse refuses to eat his food, the man to whom he belongs, must take the first opportunity to report it to the Officer or non-com-

missioned Officer, when they are on their visiting rounds, upon which the former is to be sent for, to examine into the nature of the horse's disorder, who must afterwards carefully attend him, and apply such remedies as are most proper to restore him to his appetite, or to cure him, if he has got any distemper; on which account, every Captain must take great care to provide a capable farrier for his troop, or squadron; one who understands all the diseases to which horses are subject, and can also shoe them well.

Art. 9. As soon as a horse is seized with any infectious disorder, or discovered to be glandered, he must immediately be put by himself, and the greatest care taken, to prevent his coming near any that are sound.

Art. 10. The men are to curry, and rub their horses well down every morning; and, after they have dressed them, are to put on their body-clothes; they must also keep their stalls clean, and litter them up well at nights.

Art. 11. When a horse is hot, after the exercise, or a march, he must not be suffered either to eat or drink, within less than two hours time; after which, the sweat must be wiped off, and when he is dry, he must be curried again.

Art. 12. Above all things care must be taken on a march to prevent the horses backs from being galled, on which account, it becomes necessary that the men should first be taught how to saddle their horses, to make up their baggage,
and

and to ride in the proper manner. If a horse's back, notwithstanding all precautions have been taken, should happen to gall, he must not be ridden the day following; the Officers, therefore, and non-commissioned Officers are required carefully to examine the horses backs every day before they are saddled, to see if any of them are in the least degree swelled, because some men, from an unwillingness to walk on foot, might otherwise conceal an accident of such a nature.

Art. 13. When a Troop, or Squadron, is at any time ordered to march, and has many sick horses, it must be owing to the negligence of the Captain and his inferior Officers, by which they will greatly injure their own characters; for as often as Officers are found guilty of such inattention to their duty, they must be severely reprimanded by their Colonel or commanding Officer.

N. B. On a march, the men must be strictly enjoined, to put their hands frequently, before and behind, under their saddles, in order to feel whether their horses backs itch in any part; because a saddle may very possibly come suddenly to pieces in riding, although it was perfect at the time of its being put upon the horse's back.

Art. 14. When a horse dies, the commanding Officer of the Regiment must inquire into the cause of it, and if his death can be imputed to any neglect or omission in the Captain of the Troop, or Squadron, to which he belonged, such Captain shall become accountable for the value of him; nor shall it be admitted as any excuse for him, to challenge his Officers or non-commissioned Officers
with

with a want of proper care, because he himself alone is responsible for it, and for that reason ought to oblige them at all times to discharge their duty in a proper manner.

N. B. The horses are not to be foddered too close together; nor their bellies be suffered to grow large.

Art. 15. One half of every Troop, or Squadron, is to assemble with their horses at their Captain's quarters, about half an hour after eight every morning, Sundays excepted, whether it rains or not; and the other half about three or four in the afternoon. The horses are to be ridden with *Bridons*, and in their body-clothes, which must be girthed on with *surcingles*. The men are to have on their waist-coats, and frocks; their foraging-caps, with their hair tucked up under them, and their boots, but no side arms. When the half-Troop, or Squadron is assembled, and formed, it must be ordered to go to the right-about by fours, and march out of the garrison to take its exercise; on which occasion it must be attended, both morning and afternoon, either by the Captain, a Lieutenant, or Cornet; who is not to march constantly in one place, but to continue moving about upon the front, flanks, or rear, in order to correct the men, as often as he finds it necessary, and to see that they keep their proper distances, and sit upright on their horses. When they have been out about an hour, they are to march back into the garrison by fours, and draw up at the Captain's quarters again, where they must receive the word of command to go to the right-about by fours, and then march to their quarters. This is to be practised

practised every day, in rainy weather as well as in fair; and during the frosts or snows of the winter, the Captain must find out some piece of ground, commodious, and free from ice, for that purpose. In summer-time, the horses are likewise to be ridden out on Sundays, after the performance of divine service in the afternoon; because it is his Majesty's opinion, that nothing is so beneficial to them, as their being moderately exercised every day, as it keeps them in wind, and prevents their growing stiff in their joints, as well as too full of flesh, which he has himself experienced in his own horses: his Majesty does not so much require them to be fat, as to be sound, and in condition to endure fatigue; it is therefore his strict command, that these directions shall be at all times punctually complied with, for which the Colonels, and Commandants of Regiments, together with the field-Officers, and Captains, are to be responsible.

N. B. In marching out of the garrison, and back again, one non-commissioned Officer must be posted in the front, and one in the rear.

P A R T.

PART VII.

CHAP. I.

Of the March of a Troop, Squadron, or Regiment.

Article 1.

WHEN a Regiment marches by Troops, and is to pass through any fortrefs, or large town, whether it be garrisoned or not, the Troops are to dress themselves in a proper manner in the morning, and, when they arrive before the gate, are to draw up on some commodious piece of ground, and form in Squadrons.

Art. 2. The Regiment being formed in Squadrons, is to march off without sound of Trumpet, or beat of Drum, till it arrives near the gate, where the signal is to be given for the men to draw their swords. All the Officers are to remain at their respective posts, while the Regiment is passing through the town; and the General, or Colonel, is likewise to draw his sword, and to march at the head of it.

N. B. The Officers, and non-commissioned Officers, must take care that no man, during the Regiment's march

march through the town, and likewise on its march by troops through villages, leaves his division to go into any house.

No woman must be suffered to appear with the Regiment on its march through the town, but, during the time that it is forming in Squadrons before the gate, the women and the baggage are to make the best of their way forwards.

Art. 3. When a Troop, Squadron, or Regiment, marches through any head-quarters, or village, where a General-Officer is, swords must be drawn, and trumpets sounded, or drums beaten.

Art. 4. All Officers shall be present with their men, both at their marching out of, and into quarters; they are, therefore, neither to stay behind, nor to ride on before, and every Officer who presumes to do it, or on any account to absent himself from his Troop, or Squadron, shall be cashiered.

N. B. No man shall quit his division, without permission, during the whole march; and when any one has occasion to stay behind, the Officer commanding the division to which he belongs, must leave a non-commissioned Officer to take care of, and bring him up again.

Art. 5. When a Regiment is to march, a quarter-master must be detached the evening before, to provide a supply of beer at the rendezvous appointed for a general halt, that the men may be prevented from leaving their horses, and running into any adjacent village.

C H A P. II.

Of the March-Routes of Troops,
Squadrons, or Regiments.*Article 1.*

TROOPS, Squadrons, or Regiments, when they assemble in the months of exercise, or march to a general review, are always to take the most direct route to the appointed rendezvous.

N. B. During the whole march, a guard must be appointed over the kettle-drums, consisting of a Corporal and 10 men, who are to march before them.

Art. 2. Regiments, Squadrons, and Troops, on a march, must always take up their night-quarters as much as possible in towns, whether they be garrisoned, or not; if, therefore, a town happens to be situated from half a * mile to a mile wide of their direct route, they are, notwithstanding, to march to it, for the sake of having their night-quarters therein.

Art. 3. When there is no town either in the direct road, or adjacent to it, for the reception of a Regiment, at the end of the day's march, it must be cantoned in villages, one, two, or three Troops to each, and lie in barns.

Art.

* A German mile is equal to two leagues, or six miles English.

Art. 4. What is already said concerning march-routes, is only to be understood as relative to Regiments when they are assembling to exercise in the spring, or marching to a general review, because at that time the soldiers receive their full pay, and have no right to demand any thing in their night quarters, except house-room: They are to be cantoned in towns and villages, and lie in houses and barns by Regiments, or by one, two, three, four, or more Troops or Squadrons, according as such towns or villages happen to be large or small; but when they are on a march out of one province into another, they are to conduct themselves, and to be subsisted according to the directions given in the *March-Regulations*.

N. B. When Soldiers are cantoned in villages or towns, the Officers and non-commissioned Officers must take great care, that they are cautious of fire; and when they lie in barns, that they don't smoke tobacco, to prevent which, sentries must be posted every where round about.

C H A P. III.

Of subsisting Horse, or Dragoons, on a March.

Article 1.

WHEN a Regiment, Squadron, or Troop, is on a march, and takes its route in the above mentioned manner, the justices presiding
over

over the several districts through which it is to march, are to receive advice thereof in time, together with a return, specifying the number of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, Trumpeters, or Drummers, private Men, and Horses.

Art. 2. The Sheriff, or Collector in every district, and the Magistrates also in towns, must take care that beer, bread, meat, hay, straw, oats, and all other the like necessaries be provided in sufficient quantities.

Art. 3. The Officers and private men must pay for every thing in towns on a march, in the same manner as in garrison, nor shall any one presume to require from his landlord a bed, light, or make any other the least demand whatsoever, for which every Officer shall be answerable upon his honour. The Colonel, or commanding Officer of the Regiment, Squadron, or Troop, is likewise to purchase the hay and oats. If a private man demands any thing but house room from his landlord, he shall run the gantlope; and if the Colonel, or commanding Officer does not pay for the hay and oats, according to the rate in garrison, the Sheriff, or Collector, must immediately report him to the *chamber of war and demesnes*; upon which the money shall be deducted from the Regiment, and his Majesty will moreover severely reprimand such Officer; but this is to be understood, as relating only to Regiments, when they are assembling in the months of exercise, for at other times they are to conduct themselves on a march, according to the *Regulations* made for that purpose.

N. B.

N. B. In night-quarters in a village likewise, the Officers and Soldiers must pay ready money, according to the rate established in Garrison, for every thing they buy from the countrymen, or from the people who bring goods out of the town, because they receive their full pay at that time; and sentries must be posted on the provision-carts, to prevent all irregularities.

Art. 4. In towns, landlords shall furnish straw *gratis* for the men quartered upon them, who are to lodge in the lofts when their landlords cannot provide otherwise for them; but the horses are to be taken into their barns and stables, and accommodated in the best manner. In order to render the inconvenience as small as possible to the inhabitants from the quartering of soldiers, they shall lodge in the court-house, and in other public-houses, and be supplied with the necessary quantities of straw for their bedding out of the district.

N. B. In villages, the Sheriff is to buy or provide a sufficiency of hay and oats for the horses, and of straw and wood for the men, who are to lodge in the barns.

The Officers of every Troop, or Squadron, may take a house together in a village, but the spare houses must first be disposed of in favour of the sick; and if, after they are taken care of, there still remain any, they must be equally divided amongst the Regiment.

Art. 5. The Sheriffs, Collectors, or Magistrates, shall be answerable that the bread, beer, and flesh-meat be quite good, and above all things, that the price be as reasonable as possible: when any body of men is quartered for a night in villages, the Sheriffs must send out futlers from the

Y

towns,

towns, taking care likewise that their provisions be sold at the cheapest rates.

Art. 6. When Regiments are assembling in their garrisons, or marching to a general review, two waggons above the regulation shall be allowed to every Troop of Horse, and four to every Squadron of Dragoons, to carry the new clothing, and the hats.

Art. 7. When a Regiment marches through foreign territories, they are to conduct themselves altogether, according to the instructions given in the *March Regulations*.

C H A P. IV.

Of preventing Irregularities in Night-Quarters, and on the March.

Article 1.

STRICT order and discipline must be always preserved amongst the soldiers, and all irregularities prohibited, but especially on a march, and in night quarters.

N. B. From thirty to forty men are to lodge in one house, under the care of a proportionable number of non-commissioned Officers, who shall be answerable for all disorders.

Art

Art. 2. Should any disturbances, notwithstanding all orders to the contrary, be committed, the Colonel, or commanding Officer must make examination into, and accommodate them, before he marches out of the quarters: he must, at the same time confine the soldiers so offending, and, at the end of the march, make them run the gantlope, that, by such exemplary punishments, the like offences may be prevented for the future: and as the Colonel, or commanding Officer, shall be answerable for all misdemeanors committed by the troops under his command, so he is to procure from every place wherein they are quartered for a night, a certificate of their good behaviour.

Art. 3. When a non-commissioned Officer on a march is found guilty of having, under any pretence whatsoever, beaten a boor, he shall be immediately taken prisoner, and, at the end of the march, be punished according to the nature of his offence: the soldiers, in like manner, whenever they beat or abuse the country people, shall run the gantlope.

Art. 4. His Majesty has that favourable Opinion of his Officers, as not to believe them capable of abusing or beating the poor boors, and subjects, without extraordinary provocation; but if, notwithstanding, any Officer shall be guilty of such injurious behaviour, and complaint thereof is made, such Officer will, by so doing, but ill recommend himself to him: Should any horses likewise be so hard drove, as to die on the spot, or soon after, the loss shall be made good by the commanding Officer of the Regiment, who is af-

terwards to reimburse himself from those who occasioned it.

Art. 5. Such further orders as are omitted in these Regulations, are strictly to be observed as expressed in the *March-Regulations*, for the due performance of which the Colonels, and commanding Officers of Regiments shall be answerable.



PART.

PART VIII.

FURTHER

Orders relating to the Conduct
of Officers in general.

CHAP. I.

OF SUBORDINATION.

Article 1.

HIS Majesty is highly displeas'd to understand, that a right harmony and agreement does not subsist in some Regiments, from whence factions and animosities have been produced, which are quite repugnant to subordination, and prejudicial to the service in general, as well as to the particular good of those Regiments.

His Majesty is likewise inform'd, that the orders given by superior Officers to their inferiors, are not executed with that respect, alacrity, and application which is required; nay, that some Officers have even presumed to dispute the orders of their Commanders, and to argue, first of all, whether they were right or wrong, according to
Y 3 their

their own opinions: he has, therefore, found it very necessary to forbid the like unmilitary behaviour, on pain of incurring his highest displeasure, and to give his commands in the most urgent manner, that subordination be kept up amongst the Officers of every Regiment, from the General down to the youngest Cornet, with the utmost strictness.

Art. 2. The Field-Officers are to keep the Subalterns to a strict performance of their duty, particularly the young ones, in order to initiate them properly, and to ground them in the fundamentals of the service. The non-commissioned Officers, and private Men, are to be kept under such subordination, that the Officers can depend upon their being perfectly silent and submissive on the day of action; of their executing their orders without the least murmuring, and of their being as implicitly obedient in the face of the enemy, as they are in garrison.

Art. 3. When a General Officer thinks proper to give any orders relating to his Regiment, and to his Majesty's service, and the Colonel-Commandant is of Opinion that such orders are contrary to his Majesty's gracious will and intention, the Commandant may then state his exceptions to the General, in a decent and submissive manner; but if the General, notwithstanding, insists on their being performed, it becomes his duty to comply, without further contradiction: nevertheless, he is afterwards at liberty to make a representation thereof to his Majesty, who, in case it be founded on justice, will render the General responsible.

N. B.

N. B. All orders given to a Regiment while under arms, are to be immediately executed, and no objections made till afterwards; because it would derogate from the respect and obedience which is due to every commanding Officer, and might be also attended with bad consequences to the service in general, to dispute his orders in the presence of all the Officers, and in the face of the whole Regiment.

Art. 4. As the Colonel-Commandant of a Regiment is thus to pay a passive obedience to the orders of his General, so must he, in like manner, require the same from his inferior Field-Officers; and so down thro' all the succeeding ranks in the Regiment, every Officer paying the like deference to the commands of his superior.

Art. 5. His Majesty's displeasure is, in a particular manner, highly incurred, in being informed that the subaltern Officers do not behave with due subordination to their Captains; but that they are even offended when their Captains have recourse to their authority, to keep them to the performance of their duty: it is his command, therefore, that the Captains do exact more respect from their subalterns; and, as often as any one shall presume to controvert their orders, put him immediately under arrest, and report him to the commanding Officer on the spot, who is afterwards to report the same to the Commandant of the Regiment, and the Officer so offending, must, in the mean time, remain under arrest till further orders.

Art. 6. When a subaltern Officer has been guilty of acting in opposition to the orders of his Captain to any violent degree, the commanding Officer

cer must have him * examined, and tried by a Court martial, and report it to his Majesty: nevertheless, if his offence will admit of an accommodation, the Colonel must order him to be brought prisoner to the head quarters of the Regiment, and confined for the space of a fortnight, a month, or longer, according to the nature of his crime, and to be accountable for his duty besides.

Art. 7. When a Captain does not, without any connivance, keep his subalterns under due subordination, and to a constant performance of their duty, as far as relates to his Majesty's service, and the care of his Troop, or Squadron; or does not order them prisoners to the main-guard as often as they are guilty of any neglect or disobedience, such Captain must be ignorant of his own duty; the commanding Officer therefore of the Regiment, as soon as he is informed of it, must reprimand him severely for his want of conduct, and report him to his Majesty.

Art. 8. In short, the subaltern Officers shall pay the same obedience and respect to their Captains, in every thing relative to his Majesty's service, as they do to the commanding Officer of the Regiment.

Art. 9. Although his Majesty is most graciously disposed to hope, that the Field Officers and Captains will not be so unmindful of their duty, as at any time to oppose the authority of a superior Officer; nevertheless, if it should happen otherwise,

* See the following Chapter,

therwise, a Lieutenant-Colonel, in the absence of the Colonel, may put a Major so offending under arrest; and a Major, in the absence of the Lieutenant Colonel, has the same power over a Captain; but a report thereof must be afterwards made to the General, or commanding Officer of the Regiment, who will give further orders relative to the arrest of such Field-Officer, or Captain, without which, no Officer under confinement can be released.

N. B. When a Captain opposes the authority of a Field-Officer, or a subaltern Officer that of a Captain, the Field-Officer has a power to put the Captain so offending under arrest; and the Captain likewise such Subaltern, without an order from the Commandant of the Regiment, especially if such offence be committed under arms; and a report thereof must be afterwards made to the commanding Officer.

Art. 10. When a Field-Officer makes use of any indecent expressions to an Officer under his command, his Majesty will, by no means approve of it; nevertheless, if such a thing be done under arms, and in a heat of service, the Officer is not to take immediate notice thereof, nor attempt to justify himself upon the spot, provided such expressions are not injurious to his honour, but is afterwards to make complaint, and application for redress, to the commanding Officer.

Art. 11. When a Captain puts an inferior Officer under an arrest for breach of subordination, and such Officer, after his release, presumes to call the Captain to an account for so doing, the Captain, instead of coming to any explanation with him,

him, must immediately put him again under arrest.

Art. 12. It is hoped that every Officer is so much master of his duty, as to know in what manner the subordination of non-commissioned Officers to Officers, and of private soldiers to non-commissioned Officers, is to be kept up: and it is his Majesty's most strict command, that it be inviolably conformed to in all Regiments, otherwise the Generals and commanding Officers will be made responsible.

CHAP. II.

Of Examinations and Courts-Martial.

Article 1.

WHEN a Field-Officer is put under arrest, he must keep such arrest in his own quarters; and if his crime is capital, a guard, consisting of a non-commissioned Officer and three men, is to mount over his person; one sentry is to be posted at his door, and the non-commissioned Officer to remain in his apartment.

N. B. When a Field-Officer is guilty of high treason, or other capital crime, a sufficient guard, to prevent his escape, must be appointed.

The General, or commanding Officer of the Regiment, is to keep his sword.

Art.

Art. 2. When a Field-Officer is to be examined, he must have previous notice thereof from the Adjutant, and the Examination shall be made by the Commandant of the Regiment, and one Field-Officer, in the Commandant's quarters, to which place he must be conducted by the Adjutant: the Examination must be afterwards sent to the Solicitor-General; and if he is thereupon to be tried by a Court-martial, the Members to compose it, must be a General Officer as President, two Lieutenant-Colonels, two Majors, and two Captains.

Art. 3. In a garrison wherein a Regiment lies, the Captains when they are put under arrest, shall be sent to the main-guard; but in other garrisons, they are to keep their arrests in their own quarters, till the General, or Commandant of the Regiment gives his orders, whether they shall be released or brought prisoners to the head quarters; if a Captain is to be brought to the head-quarters, an Officer must conduct him to the main-guard there, and deliver his sword to the Commandant of the Regiment.

N. B. When a Captain, or any other Officer is put under arrest, on account of a capital crime, he must be conducted to the head-quarters of the Regiment, by a guard sufficient to prevent all possibility of his escape.

Art. 4. When a Captain is to undergo an examination, one Field-Officer, and one Captain must be ordered upon it, and he is to be brought to the place by a non commissioned Officer of the main-

main-guard : when a Captain is to be tried by a Court-martial, the members to compose it shall be a Lieutenant-Colonel for the president, two Majors, two Captains, two Lieutenants, and two Cornets; but if his crime be capital, his Court-martial shall consist of a Colonel as President, two Lieutenant-Colonels, two Majors, two Captains, three Lieutenants, and three Cornets.

Art. 5. When a subaltern Officer is put under arrest in a garrison, he shall always be ordered to the main-guard, provided it is commanded by an Officer; but if by a non-commissioned Officer, he is to keep his arrest in his own quarters: and if he is to be sent to the head-quarters of the Regiment, a non-commissioned Officer and two Men are to guard him thither.

Art. 6. When a subaltern Officer is to be examined, and tried by a Court-martial, he shall be brought from the main-guard to the place of trial, by a non-commissioned Officer and two men; and one Captain, and one Subaltern, shall be ordered for the examination; but the members who are to compose the Court-martial shall be a Field-Officer as president, two Captains, two Lieutenants, and two Cornets: if his crime is capital, the Court-martial shall consist of a Lieutenant-Colonel as president, two Majors, three Captains, three Lieutenants, and three Cornets.

Art. 7. When a non-commissioned Officer is to be examined, and tried by a Court martial, one Lieutenant, and one Cornet shall be ordered for his examination, and for his Court-martial,
one

one Captain as president, two Lieutenants, two Cornets, two Quarter-masters, and two Corporals: if his crime be capital, his Court-Martial shall consist of a Field-Officer as president, three Captains, three Lieutenants, three Cornets, three Quarter-masters, and three Corporals.

Art. 8. When a private soldier is to be examined, and tried by a Court-martial, an old first Lieutenant shall be ordered for his examination; and for his Court-martial a Captain as president, two Lieutenants, two Cornets, two Quarter-masters, two Corporals, and two private Men; if his crime is capital, the Court-martial shall consist of a Field-Officer as president, three Captains, three Lieutenants, three Cornets, three Quarter-masters, three Corporals, and three private Men.

N. B. When a non-commissioned Officer, or private Soldier, undergoes an examination on account of a capital offence, a Captain, and one Subaltern, shall be ordered for it, especially if he has accomplices in his crime.

Art. 9. A Field-Officer, when he is condemned to a fortress, shall be conducted into it by a Captain; a Captain under the same sentence, by a subaltern Officer; and a subaltern Officer by a non-commissioned Officer and two Men.

C H A P. III.

Directions for the preserving of good
Discipline amongst the Soldiers.*Article 1.*

SINCE, after Subordination, nothing is more essentially necessary, than strict discipline amongst the soldiers, so it is his Majesty's command that the Generals, or commanding Officers, shall keep their respective Regiments, and likewise the Captains their Troops, or Squadrons, under severe discipline, and connive at no irregularities.

Art. 2. The Soldiers shall be constrained to a regular observation of all the rites and ceremonies of the religion which they profess.

Art. 3. No common whores must be suffered to remain in a garrison; but the commanding Officer, on the contrary, shall order all such to be stripped naked, and turned out.

Art. 4. No gaming shall be permitted amongst the non-commissioned Officers, and private Soldiers; and every Soldier who is detected at play, shall be put prisoner, and without trial run the gantlope the day following.

Art.

Art. 5. When a soldier comes drunk upon the parade, gets drunk when on duty, goes away from his guard without leave, sleeps upon his post, or quits it before he is regularly relieved, he shall be confined, and the day following run the gantlope, without trial, ten times through 200 men.

Art. 6. All acts of violence, on whomsoever they are committed by soldiers, shall be punished with the gantlope : as soon, therefore, as a complaint of this kind is made against any soldier, he must be confined, examined, and tried by a Court-martial, and sentenced to run the gantlope.

N. B. When any disorders are committed in quarters, the offenders must be the more severely punished ; because every Soldier is not only to avoid treating his landlord, or any other person not belonging to the house, with abuse, but, on the contrary, to behave to him even with respect and civility ; and if any soldier is ill-treated, he must make complaint to his Officer.

Art. 7. All Soldiers presuming to argue with Officers, or non-commissioned Officers, either on or off duty, under arms, or otherwise, shall be severely punished with the gantlope ; but more especially when they are guilty of such insolence under arms ; at which time, a soldier so offending shall be immediately confined, and the day following run the gantlope ten times through 200 men : but if a soldier contradicts, or threatens any Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, by word or action, he shall be shot.

Art.

Art. 8. Whereas till now various irregularities and outrages have been at different times committed by Soldiers on furlough; whenever therefore any soldier is guilty of the like behaviour for the future, and complaint thereof is made, he shall be taken prisoner by the nearest garrison, and an examination made concerning his crime, after which, he shall be conveyed prisoner from one garrison to another, till he arrives at the Regiment to which he belongs, where he shall be punished with the gantlope, according to the nature of his offence, in a severe and exemplary manner, and never obtain a furlough afterwards.

N. B. When a soldier on furlough is guilty of any irregularities in a garrison, he must be immediately confined, and proceeded against in the manner above directed.

Art. 9. His Majesty is also informed, that in some Regiments the Soldiers are very much connived at in stealing provisions, when they are on command, or furlough, in the country; but such practices shall be strictly prohibited for the future; and whenever complaints of that nature are made against any soldiers, and such soldiers are not severely punished, the commanding Officers of the Regiments to which they belong, shall be answerable.

Art. 10. When burghers, countrymen, or any other persons whatsoever, have complaints to make against Officers, non-commissioned Officers, or Soldiers, they must have recourse to the General, or, in his absence, to the commanding Officer of the
the

the Regiment, who is on all such occasions, the first person to be applied to for redress: but if the General, or commanding Officer should not do immediate justice to the complainants, they must appeal to the *Chamber of war and demesnes*; and if they fail of redress there likewise, they are then permitted to represent their grievances to his Majesty, by a memorial presented to his sacred person: nevertheless, it is his Majesty's strict command, that all complaints of this kind shall be examined by the Generals and commanding Officers of Regiments, or by the *Chamber of war and demesnes*, and that immediate justice be done to the persons injured, that he may consequently not be troubled on unnecessary occasions: if notwithstanding any complaints should come before him from persons, who have first made a regular application, and have not been redressed, the Generals, or commanding Officers, and the *Chamber of war and demesnes*, will be made responsible: at the same time, his Majesty declares, that if any burgher, or countryman proceeds irregularly in his application, and presumes to make his first complaint to him, it shall be rejected though ever so equitable, and himself moreover punished: all Officers likewise, non-commissioned Officers, and private Soldiers, when they have injuries to redress, or demands to make, are to pursue the same regular course of obtaining satisfaction; and the General, or Colonel of a Regiment, who is at any time applied to on such occasions, is immediately to inquire into, and, as much as possible, accommodate matters: the Generals and Colonels of Regiments, therefore, and the *Chamber of war and demesnes*, shall be answerable in general, that no complaints

of any kind are brought before his Majesty, on pain of incurring his highest displeasure.

Art. 11. Punishments for petty crimes may be allotted, and put in execution at the discretion of the Colonel, or commanding Officer of a Regiment; but when Officers are brought before Courts-martial, and Soldiers are tried for life, their examinations, and the proceedings of the Courts-martial shall be transmitted to the Solicitor General.

Art. 12. Non-commissioned Officers shall be severely punished for committing irregularities, and, according to the nature of their offences, must be either reduced to private centinels for a certain time, or during life; or be condemned to the † *Karre*.

Art. 13. All other kinds of irregularities are already prohibited in the *articles of war*, and will therefore not be repeated in these *Regulations*; but Regiments are to have recourse to them for directions concerning the punishment of Soldiers for the breach of such articles as are therein contained.

CHAP.

† This punishment is working at the public works with a wheel-barrow, the prisoner having one fetter on.

· C H A P. IV.

How the Vacancies of Officers, and non-commissioned Officers are to be supplied.

Article 1.

WHEN an Officer's commission becomes vacant in a Regiment, the Colonel, or commanding Officer thereof shall recommend such gentleman from amongst the non-commissioned Officers to his Majesty, whose superior merit alone intitles him to the succession; and shall be answerable, if the non-commissioned Officer so recommended, is not possessed of every qualification required to compose an Officer.

Art. 2. No non-commissioned Officer shall be recommended to his Majesty for preferment in any Regiment, till he has served in it for the space of three years at least.

N. B. When a non-commissioned Officer, although no gentleman, has great merit; has a good understanding, a graceful person, and has at least been twelve years in the service, he shall be recommended to his Majesty for a second Lieutenancy.

Art. 3. No commission shall remain vacant longer than a fortnight, or at most three weeks, and the

Officer who succeeds shall be intitled to all the vacant pay.

Art. 4. When a non-commissioned Officer, being a Gentleman, is wanting in a Troop of Horse, or Squadron of Dragoons, the Captain thereof must endeavour to provide another to supply his place.

Art. 5. When a Gentleman who has not been a Cadet, is appointed a non-commissioned Officer, he shall first do private soldier's duty for three months, in order to learn the exercise, and to render himself master of his duty, before he acts as non-commissioned Officer; nevertheless, he is to wear non-commissioned Officer's clothing from the first day of his appointment.

Art. 6. When a non-commissioned Officer, and not a Gentleman, is wanting in a Troop, or Squadron, the Captain thereof shall recommend three capable Soldiers to the Colonel, or commanding Officer of the Regiment, one of which he is to select, to supply the vacancy.

Art. 7. No Soldier shall be appointed a non-commissioned Officer in a Regiment, till he has served in it for the space of four years; and the Captains, when non-commissioned Officers are wanting, must take particular care to recommend no soldiers to be appointed such, but those who excel in bravery, discretion, and good conduct; none, therefore, shall for the future be made non-commissioned Officers, merely because they can write a good hand, as has hitherto been the custom, (that being a qualification rather to be accounted casual, than

than either meritorious or essential) in consequence of which restriction, the non-commissioned Officers will be complete soldiers, and not simple scriblers.

N. B. Such Soldiers as are inspired with some ambition, are principally to be selected for non-commissioned Officers.

It being highly necessary, that a non-commissioned Officer should have some skill in horsemanship, particular care therefore must be taken, that no private men are made non-commissioned Officers, but such as are properly qualified.

Art. 8. When a private man has performed some brave exploit in an engagement, or has signalized himself in any conspicuous manner, in the face of the enemy, he shall be promoted before all others, and not only appointed a Quarter-master, but recommended to be an Officer.

Art. 9. When a non-commissioned Officer is wanting in a Troop or Squadron, and the Captain has no private man in it worthy to supply the vacancy, the Colonel must appoint one out of another, and the Captain must, in lieu of him, give back a man to that Troop or Squadron, of equal size with the new non-commissioned Officer, and proper to be posted in the same rank and file in which he was.

CHAP. V.
Of RECRUITING.

Article 1.

SINCE Regiments are at liberty to enlist all such men as are young and able to serve, no pressing shall be permitted under any pretence whatsoever, for which the commanding Officers of Regiments shall be answerable.

Art. 2. Regiments may enlist men at discretion, but no Recruit shall be sworn to the Standards till he has received the holy sacrament, that the sanctity of an oath may not be violated.

N. B. His Majesty permits all such young men to be enlisted, as are already fit to serve, or will become so in time; but those who are incapable by reason of any infirmity, as also the sons of all such burghers as are worth 10000 dollars, are exempted, and no Officer shall enlist them, on pain of being cashiered.

Art. 3. No burghers, countrymen, or labourers, having fixed habitations, nor any new-established subjects out of foreign countries settled in *Prussia*, shall be compelled to serve, contrary to their own free-will and inclination: in like manner, when a burgher, or countryman, has only one son, who is obliged to manage the business of his house, he shall not be pressed into the service, although he be of
a pro-

a proper size for it, lest the ruin of his family should be the consequence, unless he has an extraordinary fine person indeed.

Art. 4. No Officers shall take money for the discharges of such Recruits as prove unfit to serve, on pain of being cashiered; the commanding Officers, therefore, of Regiments shall be answerable, that no irregularities of this kind are admitted within their several districts, and take care, that all such young men, as are under size, obtain their discharges without paying for them: Captains also, and Officers who are recruiting, shall not discharge any man for money, on pain of being cashiered.

N. B. If a recruiting non-commissioned Officer suffers any man to desert for money, he shall be condemned to the *Karre* for three years.

Art. 5. No young Officers addicted to extravagancies shall be employed on the recruiting service, but such only as are of discreet and solid dispositions.

Art. 6. Regiments must complete themselves with sound and able men; and the Field-Officers belonging to old Regiments are to accept of none under five feet six inches, or above thirty years of age.

Art. 7. Every Regiment is to give three men annually to the King's Regiment, who are required to be from five feet nine inches, to six feet high; to be extremely well-proportioned, and not more than from eighteen to twenty-six years of age;

his Majesty will pay for them, but for the tallest, no sum exceeding 300 dollars; for others in proportion to their inferior sizes, and the less advance-money is given, the better it is in general for the service.

N. B. The new Regiments are not to give more advance-money for a recruit, than from ten to fifteen dollars.

Art. 8. The Generals of Regiments shall take care, that every Troop of Horse, or Squadron of Dragoons is composed of two-thirds foreigners, and but one-third Prussians; and that the Captains forbear to enlist those, in their several districts, whose persons they are always secure of, as a resource in cases of necessity.

Art. 9. His Majesty is informed, that Officers recruiting in foreign countries, render the duty difficult by overbidding one another, by which means a man is sometimes in treaty with Officers of different Regiments: he therefore strictly forbids all such proceedings, and, at the same time, commands, that, as soon as a man is first spoken to by an Officer of one Regiment, no Officer, or non-commissioned Officer belonging to another, shall endeavour to pervert his intentions, either by offering him more advance-money, or by reflecting on other Regiments; nor shall they interfere in his enlistment, or hinder it, while the first Officer is in agreement with him, by any stratagem or means whatsoever, on pain, if an Officer, of being cashiered, and, if a non-commissioned Officer, of being condemned to the *Karre*.

Art.

Art. 10. When an Officer, or non commissioned Officer, recruiting in foreign countries, treats with a man, but leaves the place before he can engage him completely, and some other Officer afterwards inlists him; then the last Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, must keep him, and the first shall have no right or title to him, notwithstanding he might, during the time of his stay there, have maintained him several days, have advanced him money, and been at other expences on his account.

Art. 11. When a Recruit in a foreign country hath actually inlisted himself in any Regiment, his engagement shall remain valid: but if he should afterwards become dissatisfied, and unwilling to remain in the Regiment in which he has before inlisted, and should offer himself to an Officer of another Regiment, the Officer must entertain him as if for himself, and void of his former obligation; but, as soon as he got him into his Majesty's dominions, he must send him to the Regiment, in which he had first engaged himself.

Art. 12. An Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, who gives money to any foreigner, on his promise to serve in no other Regiment, and, relying thereupon, suffers him to go away, but the same person, a year afterwards, inlists in another Regiment; then the last Regiment is to be intitled to him, and the first shall have no right to him, nor be allowed to demand him, under the pretence of a former engagement, and his having received money; because when an Officer, or non-commissioned Officer, engages a young man,
but

but does not bring him to the Regiment, leaving him behind till he is grown taller, such obligation shall not subsist longer than for a year, at the expiration of which time, any other Regiment is at liberty to entertain him, and shall afterwards keep him likewise, because Regiments have no separate districts in foreign countries.

Art. 13. When a deserter inlists in a Regiment, without confessing his desertion, or having obtained a pardon, he shall, as soon as he comes into his Majesty's dominions, and is discovered by the Regiment from which he deserted, be restored to it again, on reimbursement of charges.

Art. 14. Officers who inlist handsome fellows, without any sort of violence or compulsion; Colonels likewise who present good Regiments, and Captains Troops, or Squadrons, with their men in complete order, will recommend themselves in the best manner to his Majesty; on the contrary, bad Regiments will reflect great discredit upon their respective Colonels and Captains, who will, by such apparent arguments of their neglect, recommend themselves in the worst manner to him.

N. B. The Generals, or commanding Officers of Regiments, shall take great care, that the Captains keep their Troops, or Squadrons, always in good order, that all bad men are discharged, and their places supplied by such only as are found and unexceptionable.

Art. 15. Colonels and Captains must have every man well searched, and examined, whether he

he is found, and able to serve, before they enrol and swear him.

Art 16. When a man is discharged out of a Troop, or Squadron, the Captain must enlist another of a sufficient size to stand in the same division, rank, and file, that the Regiment may, at least, not decline in point of men, of which the Colonel, as also the commanding Officer, must take care, as they shall be answerable for the contrary.

Art 17. When Recruits are sent from one garrison to another, they must always be escorted by a party on horseback.

N. B. Parties and detachments of all kinds must be on horseback, and not on foot.

C H A P. VI.

Of DESERTION.

Article 1.

HIS Majesty is highly displeas'd to see, by the monthly returns, that men are, from time to time, deserting from their Regiments and Standards, which is matter of more surprize, because a soldier can have no just reason to complain, since, as his Majesty is graciously pleas'd to assure himself, every man receives his full pay, which is more than is given in most other services; as
also,

also, both large and small mounting in entire quantities every year; foreigners moreover enlist themselves by voluntary agreement, and for large advance money, and all their lawful demands are amply gratified; his Majesty cannot, therefore, be persuaded to impute such desertion to any other cause, than the want of distinctly reading, and explaining the *Articles of War*, to Recruits, when they are sworn to the Standards, particularly those relating to desertion; and for that reason is pleased to give the following orders.

Art. 2. When a Recruit swears to the Standards, and the Solicitor is present, an Officer is likewise to attend the ceremony, during which the Standard bearer must hold the standards; but in the absence of the Solicitor, either the Captain himself, or a Lieutenant of his Troop, or Squadron, together with a Quarter-master, must swear him.

Art. 3. The violation of an oath, and the divine vengeance which will infallibly attend it, must be explained to every Recruit, before he swears to the Standards; the *Articles of War* must be also distinctly read over to him; and if he is not a German, interpreted, and clearly explained to him in his own language; when he himself acknowledges, that he understands every particular well, and afterwards voluntarily offers to be conformable thereto, he must take the oath in the usual manner.

N. B. The *Articles of War* shall be distinctly read over to every Troop, or Squadron, once a month,
and

and at the same time interpreted to all such soldiers as don't understand the German language.

Art. 4. A foreigner, who voluntarily enlists for the advance-money, and has afterwards the insolence to desert, when he is apprehended, whether it be his first or second offence of the kind, he shall be hanged without mercy.

Art. 5. A soldier, and a native of *Prussia*, who deserts, whether he was enlisted voluntarily or not, whether he received advance money, or not; also whether it be his first or second offence of the kind, when he is apprehended, he shall be hanged without mercy.

Art. 6. When a soldier deserts out of a garrison, the commanding Officer must detach parties of Horse and Foot over all the roads, and issue out warrants, in order to apprehend him as soon as possible.

Art. 7. The Officers and Parties ordered out for the apprehending of a deserter, are to raise the *bue and cry* in every village; upon which the boors are to ring the alarm-bell, and to search all the adjacent woods.

Art. 8. When a boor, or burgher, apprehends a deserter, he shall receive twelve dollars from the Captain of the Troop or Squadron to which he belongs, for the payment of which the commanding Officer of the Regiment shall be answerable.

Art.

Art. 9. No soldiers shall be permitted to go, either on party, or furlough, above a quarter of a mile from his garrison, without a pass sealed with the seal of the Regiment; and every soldier shall, moreover, be obliged to shew his pass to every person who requires it; all country people, therefore, as often as they meet a soldier, are always to examine it, before they permit him to pass.

Art. 10. Every soldier, who is detected with a counterfeit, or bad pass, shall be apprehended as a deserter, carried to the nearest garrison, and from one garrison to another, till he arrives at the Regiment to which he belongs.

Art. 11. When a soldier deserts, and afterwards offers to return to his Regiment, if his pardon will be granted, the Colonel must transmit it to him.

CHAP. VII.

Of Returns and Reports.

Article 1.

COLONELS and Commandants of Regiments are to send their monthly returns directly to his Majesty, and so as to be always received by the fourth day after the expiration of the foregoing month.

Art.

Art. 2. The rank-returns of Officers, and the returns of quarters, are to be transmitted every month to the *Secretary at War*, and every Colonel or Commandant of a Regiment, who does not send them in regularly, shall pay 50 ducats to the invalid-fund.

Art. 3. All returns must be transmitted to his Majesty upon honour and conscience, and every Colonel, whose return is found false in any particular, shall be cashiered; unless he can make it evidently appear, that it was contrary to his knowledge, and altogether in consequence of the returns of Troops or Squadrons, delivered in to him by their respective commanding Officers, in which case the commanding Officer guilty of the offence shall be cashiered.

Art. 4. All extraordinaries happening in Regiments are to be immediately reported to his Majesty; but when Colonels and commanding Officers have matters of no very great importance to report, they may defer doing it, till they send in their monthly returns; and when they have no reports to make, they are only to transmit the monthly return inclosed in a cover.

Art. 5. Colonels, or commanding Officers, having regimental, or other affairs to report to his Majesty, are to represent the contents of their letters, by concise superscriptions upon the back, of them, and to relate the particulars within.

Art.

Art. 6. When a gentleman dies in a Regiment in which he was appointed a non-commissioned Officer by his Majesty, the Colonel, or Commandant thereof, when he sends in his monthly return, is to report his death, to mention his name, and to specify the time when he was sent to the Regiment; as likewise, whether he had served amongst the Cadets, or in his Majesty's Regiment, or from whence he was taken.

Art. 7. Colonels, and Commandants of Regiments are every year, on the 1st of January, to send in a return of the Officers of their respective Regiments to his Majesty, minutely describing the conduct of every Officer, whether good or bad, with the strictest regard paid to reality, and without the least prejudice, which they are required to do upon their honour and conscience. They are to particularise the different habits and abilities of every Officer, whether he be addicted to drinking, whether he is possessed of a ready understanding and good parts, or is weak and simple.

N. B. In these returns the Colonels are likewise to report the behaviour and merit of their Surgeon-Majors, and whether they give a general Satisfaction, or not.

Art. 8. When Commandants of Regiments make unjust reports to his Majesty of the good or bad conduct of their Officers, and he discovers it, such Commandants will be cashiered.

Art. 9. When an Officer is guilty of a cowardly action, or suffers himself to be ill-used, and
does

does not resent the injury, the Colonel must report him to his Majesty, who will cashier him; notwithstanding which, the *Duel-Edict* shall not be laid aside, but his Majesty confirms its force afresh in these new *Regulations*, and will have the *Articles of War* on that subject referred to on all occasions.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Duelling.

Article 1.

AS it is observable that Rencounters, and Duels happen frequently amongst Officers, in which many are either killed upon the spot, or mortally wounded; and that quarrels generally arise from trifles when Officers get in liquor; his Majesty therefore hereby declares, that although he will have none but brave Officers in his service, nevertheless, the *Duel-Edict* shall not lose its force, nor shall any Officer be accessary to, or begin quarrels, rencounters, and duels; on the contrary, it is his strict command, that Officers in general, shall agree well together, and that all unnecessary disputes shall be avoided: Generals, therefore, Colonels, and all Commandants of Regiments, as often as they are informed that any Officers have quarrelled together, must immediately order them under arrest, and make report thereof to his Majesty, who will either cashier the aggressor, or both, if they be equally guilty.

N. B. Any Officer that canes another in a quarrel, shall be cashiered with infamy.

Art. 2. As it appears by daily experience that most quarrels happen over liquor, excessive drinking, therefore, must be altogether prohibited amongst Officers in general; and the Colonels and Commandants of Regiments are, in the strictest manner, to forbid it, and likewise to keep a watchful eye over the behaviour of their Officers in this respect.

Art. 3. When Officers, notwithstanding all orders to the contrary, get drunk together, begin quarrels, rencounters, and duels, either in liquor, or at play, or are guilty of any other such like offensive practices, they must be put under arrest, and tried by a Court-martial, which shall adjudge a double degree of punishment for every crime committed in consequence of drunkenness; as for example, when an Officer, being sober, is guilty of a crime, for which, according to the *Articles of War*, he is condemned to lose three months pay, to be confined a year in a fortress, to be cashiered, to be shot, or beheaded; for the same crime committed when drunk, he shall lose six months pay, instead of three; shall be confined two years instead of one; be cashiered with the addition of infamy, instead of a simple dismissal; be beheaded instead of being shot; and instead of being beheaded, be hanged.

Art. 4. When any person is killed, or mortally wounded, in a duel, or rencounter, and the murderer makes his escape, the commanding Officer

ficer on the spot shall send out Officers, and non-commissioned Officers, on horseback, upon all the roads, in order to apprehend him, if possible.

Art. 5. If the Officers, or non commissioned Officers at any time detached in pursuit of such murderer, knowingly permit him to escape, and do not apprehend him, when in their power, they themselves shall be reputed principals, and suffer the punishment, which, according to law, would have been inflicted on him. All persons, in like manner, happening to be present, when any Officer, non-commissioned Officer, or private Soldier is killed in a rencounter, who don't immediately apprehend the offender, but permit him to escape, shall be deemed guilty of the murder, and suffer accordingly.

N. B. All persons present at any murder, without endeavouring to prevent it, shall be answerable.

The orders above given concerning quarrels, rencounters, and duels amongst Officers, extend also to the non-commissioned Officers, and private Soldiers.

Art. 6. If an Officer on duty is insulted by his Colonel, or Field-Officer, or is even threatened to be caned, he is not to take notice of the injury till he is relieved, after which he is at liberty to demand proper satisfaction: but if any Officer presumes, because he has been severely reprimanded, or corrected for some irregularity by a Colonel, or Field-Officer, to challenge him, he shall be confined in a fortress for eight years; and during life, if he draws his sword: if he wounds him, he shall be shot without mercy; and beheaded, if he does it while on duty.

C H A P. IX.

Of Discharges.

Article 1.

NO Colonel shall grant a discharge to a non-commissioned Officer, who is a gentleman, especially if his Majesty sent him to the Regiment, without having first applied to him, and obtained his order for that purpose; at the same time he is to report the reason why such non-commissioned Officer requires his discharge, and also whether his behaviour has been such, as to render him worthy to be an Officer.

Art. 2. When a Captain is desirous to discharge any man in his Troop, or Squadron, he must procure a better to supply his place, on which condition the commanding Officer of the Regiment may grant his permission; and if, on the contrary, any Captain does discharge a soldier, and not replace him with a better, he shall be cashiered.

Art. 3. When men, by reason of age or sickness, become incapable of longer service, his Majesty will on no account permit them to be discharged without his knowledge, but they are to be reported to him by their respective Regiments, that they may be taken proper care of, and not
re-

reduced to the necessity of begging for a livelihood.

Art. 4. Every foldier's discharge shall be signed by his Colonel, and sealed with the seal of the Regiment. When a man is discharged, he must be furnished by the Regiment with an old coat, waistcoat, and breeches, and not be dismissed naked.

C H A P. X.

Of Leave of Absence, and Furloughs.

Article. 1.

THE Colonel, or Commandant of a Regiment, may grant leave of absence for four days to any Officer who applies for it, but for no longer a time, without his Majesty's permission; nor shall any Officer be suffered to go out of one province into another; namely, out of *Prussia* into *Pomerania*; out of the *Electorate* into *Pomerania*; out of the dutchy of *Magdeburg* into that of *Cleves*, and so on, without the same sanction of authority.

Art. 2. When an Officer wants leave of absence, he is to apply to the Commandant of the Regiment, who must inquire whether such Officer has real business abroad, which requires his presence, and in what time he will be able to get it

despatched; after which, the Commandant when he sends in his monthly return, is, at the same time, to write to his Majesty thereupon; but if such leave is applied for by an Officer only to take a journey for pleasure, the Commandant shall not write to his Majesty concerning it, nor shall any Officer be permitted to leave his Regiment on such idle pretences.

Art. 3. Two Officers only per Regiment shall be absent at a time; and in the spring of the year, from the 1st of April to the 1st of June, no Officer shall be absent, not even for four days.

Art. 4. If an Officer stays a month beyond his leave, the Colonel must report him to his Majesty, after which he is to be summoned to his Regiment, to be condemned two years to a fortress, and, at the expiration of that time, to be cashiered.

Art. 5. From the 1st of April to the 1st of June, no person whatsoever shall be absent from his Standards: Throughout the other months of the year, Captains may grant furloughs to † 12 Men at a time, and to the six supernumeraries of their respective troops, when they apply for them on proper occasions.

Art. 6. No private men shall be suffered to have furloughs to go to places, from whence they will not be able to join their Regiment in twelve days,

† — To twenty-four men at a time, and to the twelve supernumeraries of their respective Squadrons, &c. *Drag. Reguli*

days, till their Colonel has applied to his Majesty, and obtained his permission.

Art. 7. One non-commissioned Officer per Troop, and two per Squadron, may be allowed to have furloughs at a time, provided they will be able to join their Regiment in 12 days, and not otherwise, till application has first been made to his Majesty, and his leave obtained: but to non-commissioned Officers, who are gentlemen, as also to Trumpeters and Drummers, furloughs are never to be granted.

N. B. Colonels are not to apply to his Majesty for his permission to grant furloughs to non-commissioned Officers and private men, who will not be able to join their Regiment in twelve days, unless business of the utmost consequence to such non-commissioned Officers, or men, shall require it.

Art. 8. No furlough shall exceed the space of nine months, and every non-commissioned Officer and Soldier shall return to his duty, at the expiration of his appointed time, lest he should be converted into a burgher, or boor again, and by too long a practice of other professions, forget his own: no Captain, therefore, shall presume to grant furloughs of longer duration, for which the commanding Officers of Regiments, and all Field-Officers, shall be answerable.

Art. 9. Soldiers are to have their complete clothing when they go on party, or furlough; and when they are at work in the country are to wear it; every one, therefore, who is discovered working in a boor's or burgher's habit, shall, for

the first offence of the kind, run the gantlope 12 times through 200 men ; for the second, 20 times, and for the third, 30 times ; and for the fourth, shall be condemned a year to the *Karre* : all men, moreover, on furlough, are to wear their side-arms, and full clothing, when they go to church on Sundays, or Fast-days ; and to appear as clean and well dressed as the soldiers in garrison are required to be, of which the Field-Officers, who may happen to be present, are to take good care.

C H A P. XI.

Of the Marriage of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Soldiers.

Article 1.

WHEN a Field-Officer, or Captain, having a Troop, or Squadron, is desirous to marry, he must write to his Majesty for his permission, who, provided the match be suitable to his rank, and that he will be able to advantage himself by it, will not refuse it ; nevertheless, he would be much better pleased, if such Officer would remain unmarried.

Art. 2. Subaltern Officers will not be permitted to marry, they are therefore not to make application on that account, unless some one in low circumstances has an opportunity to make his fortune

tune by so doing, in which case the Colonel, or Commandant of the Regiment must write to his Majesty, giving a particular and just account of the circumstances which will attend such marriage, whereupon he will reserve to himself, whether to grant, or refuse permission.

Art. 3. No non-commissioned Officer shall marry without leave obtained from the Colonel of the Regiment, who shall not grant it to any non-commissioned Officer applying for it, unless he can make his fortune by a marriage, especially if he is but young.

Art. 4. When a soldier, being a foreigner, is desirous to marry, and has a *Capitulation*, which he is willing to resign for permission so to do, his Captain may agree to it, and the Colonel can grant him a licence; nevertheless, the Captain must take care that such foreigner does not make an imprudent match, and that his wife is not too poor, or that, at least, she will be able to maintain herself by her own work, otherwise he will be ruined: the Colonel, therefore, must make inquiry of the Captain concerning the circumstances of the marriage, before he grants the licence.

Art. 5. Soldiers, being natives, must not be suffered marry, unless it be considerably to their advantage; but marriage must be in general rather discouraged in the service, than otherwise; because the fewer there are in that state, and the better pleased his Majesty will be, on which account every Captain must take care never to have above
one

one third of his respective troop, or Squadron married, at most.

C H A P. XII.

Of reviewing Troops, or Squadrons.

Article 1.

WHEN a Regiment is quartered by single Troops, or Squadrons, in small towns, a Field-Officer is to review them every month, to exercise all such men as are not on furlough or command, and strictly to observe whether every thing is preserved in good order.

Art. 2. When a Field-Officer finds any deficiency in a Troop, or Squadron, he must mention them to the Captain, and give orders for their being repaired; for the Troop, or Squadron to be attended with more care and application, and to be brought into better order by the next review; the reviewing Field-Officer, therefore, of one month, is to deliver an account of all the irregularities he observed, and the remarks he made, to the Field-Officer for the month following; after which, if any deficiencies before complained of in a Troop, or Squadron, are found unrectified at the second review, the Field-Officer is to report the Captain commanding it to the Colonel, who must severely reprimand him.

N. B.

N. B. The Lieutenant-Colonel is to review the Troops or Squadrons first, and then the Majors, making afterwards a report of every thing to the Colonel: the Colonel, or Commandant of the Regiment shall also review them every three months, and thoroughly rectify all deficiencies,

His Majesty is desirous, that the Officers should not only know every man in the Troops, or Squadrons, to which they are severally appointed, but even in the whole Regiment; and likewise, that the men should know personally all the Officers of the Regiment, and be able to repeat their names, of which the Field-Officers are required to take care.

Art. 3. When a Captain is on command, absent with leave, or recruiting, or is confined by any lingering disorder, the General, or Commandant of the Regiment, must appoint a good Officer to his Troop, or Squadron, that it may be kept in proper order.

C H A P. XIII.

Of the Regulation of Prices, Weights, and Measures.

Article 1.

THE Governor and Commandant, together with two Field-Officers belonging to the garrison, the Commissary of the place, and two Magistrates, shall fix the price of bread, beer, and flesh-meat every month.

Art.

Art. 2. Rates shall be settled according as corn and cattle happen to be cheap or dear, and agreeably to the mutual satisfaction of the soldiers and burghers; so that the burghers may be able to pay their taxes to his Majesty, and the soldiers not be obliged to give more for bread, beer, and flesh-meat, than is reasonable.

Art. 3. When the commanding Officer cannot agree with the Commissary, and the Magistrates, about the price of commodities, he must report it to his Colonel, and the Colonel to his Majesty, explaining their difference, and afterwards waiting for his decisive orders thereupon.

N. B. The Commissary shall likewise make his report to the *grand chamber of finances, war, and demesnes*, and state his side of the question, that a regulation may be determined accordingly.

No soldier shall presume to exercise the trade of a burgher, particularly that of a butcher.

Art. 4. It is frequently the custom, when Troops, or Squadrons, march into garrison in small towns, for the Commissaries and Magistrates to advance the price of bread, beer, and flesh-meat, in order to pay the duty out of it; but this practice shall not be permitted for the future, and the Field-Officers when they make their reviews, must settle the rates in every garrison, in the presence of the Captains, the Commissary of the place, and the Magistrates.

Art. 5. The reviewing Field-Officers are strictly to examine, whether the weights and measures are just, and whether the soldiers have complaints
to

to prefer against any burgher on account of them; in which case, such burgher, provided he is accused with reason, must be made responsible.

N. B. In garrisons wherein whole Regiments lie, the Solicitors shall take care concerning the equity of the weights and measures.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Ammunition.

Article 1.

HIS Majesty will order 100 weight of powder to be given out of the Magazine annually in the spring to every Troop of Horse, and 200 to every Squadron of Dragoons, which the Colonels are to send for from the nearest fortress, giving receipts for the same to the artillery.

Art. 2. Every Troop, or Squadron, shall always have in readiness for every soldier 12 cartridges loaded with ball for his pistols, and 18 for his carbine, which are to be carefully laid up, while the Regiment remains in garrison; but when it is to take the field, the cartridges are to be given out to every man, the first day on which the army is assembled; after which, every soldier must keep his own, and take great care, that the powder does not get wetted, nor the cartridges torn.

P A R T.

AS his Majesty is informed, that the Captains and subaltern Officers contract large debts, which they are afterwards unable to pay; it is, therefore, his most strict command, that no Captain, much less any Subaltern, shall presume to borrow money, without the knowledge of the commanding Officer of the Regiment; nor, under any pretence whatsoever, take up goods on credit. When a Captain wants to take up money for the use of his Troop, or Squadron, he is to make a report thereof to the Commandant of the Regiment, who, provided he finds such money is absolutely necessary, must pass his word to the person that lends it, for the repayment of the principal; at the same time, he must demand a satisfactory account concerning the manner how, and the time in which the Captain proposes to repay it; after which, if he suffers the appointed time to elapse, without having paid his creditor, and the commanding Officer perceives that he does not make any preparation for it, he must then make a monthly deduction out of the assignment: But subaltern Officers are more especially enjoined not to contract a debt exceeding eight dollars, nor shall a commanding Officer give his security for the advance of money to any one, unless it be for a new Officer, and the sum required is to be disposed of in the purchase of his regimentals, which must be repaid afterwards either by deductions out of his pay, or remittances from home: Subaltern Officers who have nothing but their pay to subsist upon, must have recourse to frugality, and regulate



late their expences so as to live within the bounds thereof; such, on the contrary, as have other dependancies, are consequently not exposed to the necessity of running in debt, as they can send for remittances to defray all extraordinary charges. Nevertheless, his Majesty would be much better pleased, if subaltern Officers will altogether support themselves upon their pay, that by having, in such a station, abstained from those extravagancies, which have hitherto been too customary amongst them, they may never be in want of money, when they are preferred to the command of Troops, or Squadrons, but always be able to advance any sum, which may be necessary to repair deficiencies, and to keep them constantly in complete order. If, notwithstanding, the Captains and Subalterns do contract debts, unknown to their commanding Officers, they shall be put under arrest, whether they are able to discharge them or not, and reported to his Majesty, who will order every Captain so offending to be punished, as having disobeyed his commands, and afterwards put under stoppages; but the Subalterns shall be sent to the main-guard, there to remain under arrest till the amount of their pay becomes sufficient to discharge the debt, and shall do their duty besides; after which, the sum so deducted, shall not be paid to their creditors, but laid out for the benefit of the Invalids, and the creditors, moreover, punished; because no one whatsoever shall be allowed to lend money, or to part with goods upon credit, to any Captain or Subaltern, without the knowledge and consent of the Commandant of the Regiment; and, to the end that no person, either
in

in towns or the country, may attempt to justify himself on these occasions by a pretence of ignorance, this is his Majesty's order, shall be published every half year in all garrisons ; the *grand chamber of finances, war, and demesnes*, must likewise issue out an ordinance to the same effect, which shall be posted up in every town, and published from the pulpits.

N. B. The non-commissioned Officers and private men shall not borrow a single grosh from any person, on pain, if non-commissioned Officers, of being reduced to private centinels, and, if soldiers, of running the gantlope ; the creditors likewise shall not only never be repayed, but moreover be punished ; all which must be expressed in the publication of his Majesty's order, concerning the debts of Officers, and inserted also in that which shall be issued out of the *grand chamber of finances, war, and demesnes*.

C H A P. I.

Of Small Mounting.

D. G. P.

THE monthly deduction of four Groshes, six Phenings, which is to be made from every private man of the Horse, or Dragoons, amounts yearly to - - - - - 2 6 0

Every man who remains constantly with his Troop, or Squadron, shall receive yearly

D. G. P.

One Pair of Shoes	- -	1	0	0
One Pair of Shoe-foles	-	0	5	0
One upper Shirt	- -	0	7	0
Two under Shirts, at 12 Gr. each	1	0	0	0
Two Hair-bands, at 2 Gr. each	0	4	0	0
Two Stocks, at 1 Gr. 3 Ph. each	0	2	6	0
One Pair of Gaiters	- -	0	4	0
One Pair of Linnen Breeches		0	7	0

Total 3 5 6

There remains then due to the Captain 0 23 6

A private man on furlough is to receive

B b

One

	D.	G.	P.
One Pair of Shoes - - -	1	0	0
One Hair-band - - -	0	2	0
One Stock - - -	0	1	3
	<hr/>		
Total	1	3	3
	<hr/>		
There remains then good	1	2	9
	<hr/>		

A monthly stoppage of 11 Grosches, six Phenings, must be made from the non-commissioned Officers for small mounting.

The overplus of money which will remain in the Captains' hands, from this deduction for small mounting from the non-commissioned Officers, and the private men on furlough, must be laid out in furnishing the duty-men with such extraordinaries as may become necessary.

Four Grosches must be monthly deducted for small mounting, from every non-commissioned Officer, Trumpeter, Surgeon's Mate, and private Man of the Hussars, for which, amounting in two years to four Dollars, he is to receive occasionally within that space of time the following articles ;

	D.	G.	P.
Four Shirts, at 10 Grosches	1	16	0
Two Pair of Boot-soles, at 6 Gr.	0	12	0
The Boots are to be vamped in the 2d Year, the expence of } which amounts to	1	2	0
The iron heels - - -	0	4	0
	<hr/>		
Total	3	10	0

For

For the remaining 14 Groshes, either an extraordinary shirt, or pair of boot-soles, may be allowed every year, to a few such men as shall happen to have the most occasion for them.

C H A P. II.

Of paying the private Men.

Article 1.

A Private Man shall receive 10 Groshes every five days, which are to be paid after guard-mounting in the morning, Sundays and Fast-days excepted, on which, not till after the performance of divine service in the evening.

Art. 2. For the benefit of the Captains, and in order to prevent their being obliged to advance sums extraordinary, the ballance due to men on furlough, from the account of the monthly deduction of eight Groshes, shall not be paid to them, but must be stopped to supply the deficiency arising from those, who become indebted for small mounting.

Art. 3. When the Regiments assemble to exercise in the Spring, the soldiers shall be examined concerning their accounts before a Field-Officer; whether they are completely stocked in small mounting, or not; and also, whether their Captains have obliged them to provide any part there-

of themselves; but this is not to be understood of those men who have always furloughs, because they only receive one pair of shoes, one hair-band, and one stock; gaiters, upper and under shirts, and linnen breeches, they are to bring with them from home: those, on the contrary, who do their duty, and constantly remain with their Troops, or Squadrons, the Captains are to furnish with fresh necessaries, as often as they become wanting, without obliging them to supply themselves with any thing.

N. B. No soldiers shall be charged for any thing more than what is particularly specified in the account of small mounting.

C H A P. III.

Of the Arms.

Article 1.

AS every Captain has a monthly allowance for repairing the arms of his Troop, or Squadron, they must, therefore, be constantly kept in complete order; of which the Field-Officers in general are to take care, as they shall be answerable for the contrary.

Art. 2. If, during the firings, a soldier's piece misses fire, the pan cover is either not well steel-ed, the lock not in good order, or the flint is bad; as often therefore as this happens in any Troop,
or

or Squadron, the commanding Officer of the Regiment shall put the Captain thereof under arrest, unless it appears that the piece was not properly primed, or the cartridge not clean emptied into the barrel.

N. B. The rammers must be made to fix well, and so as not to fall out during the exercise.

Art. 3. His Majesty expects that the arms, together with both pistols and swords, shall not only be preserved in sufficient repair for ordinary duties, but further orders, that they shall be constantly kept in as good condition, as when they were at first delivered out new; which can be done without difficulty, provided that, as often as the stock of a firelock breaks, it is replaced with a new one, made of walnut-tree; when a barrel is worn out, or a screw broken, a new one is provided, and particular care taken upon all occasions, that every defect is completely repaired, and a broken piece rendered as strong and perfect again, as it was at first.

N. B. Every soldier shall always have one good flint in his firelock, and another, together with a worm, in his pouch.

Art. 4. Every soldier, on all parades, and whenever he is on duty, either on horseback or on foot, must always have his arms as bright as possible, particularly the barrel and brass work; must have the stock well rubbed, the inside of the lock oiled, the cock and flint screwed fast, and every part of the firelock in the completest order; on parades, therefore, and in visiting the quarters,

the Captains, and all other Officers, are to make a strict review of the arms, and to take care, that every young soldier is first taught the proper method of cleaning them.

N. B. The hammer-stalls shall be always made of red Russia leather, and never taken off but when the firings are to be performed; the flints are also to be cased with the same.

When a soldier breaks his firelock on duty, his Captain shall make it good; and although a soldier off duty should do the same, even on purpose, still the Captain is to be at the expence of repairing it, but the soldier so offending shall be severely punished with the gantlope.

Art. 5. No Captain shall, under any pretence whatsoever, make a deduction out of a soldier's pay, on pain of being cashiered, of which the Commandants of Regiments, and all Field-Officers are required to take good care; whereby it is to be understood, that a soldier must not be obliged to make up, or pay for any clothes or necessaries out of his subsistence-money; but if he abuses his Regimentals, sells, pawns, or games away any part of them, he shall be punished according as the *Articles of War* for such offences direct, and his Captain must supply him afresh.

Art. 6. When a Captain quits his Troop, or Squadron, whether the arms are old, or new, he shall receive 1000 dollars from the Captain who succeeds him; but then he is to pay for all such new carbines, pistols, and swords as are wanting, after which he is at liberty to dispose of the old, as he pleases.

Art.

Art. 7. The Captains must have their swords always in good order, and the blades of equal sizes; taking care that they are kept sharp, bright, in the proper form, and free from notches; and likewise that none of the scabbards, hooks, or chapes are either broken or wanting.

N. B. When Regiments take the Field, every Captain is to furnish himself with some spare blades, which are to be carefully packed up in the baggage-waggon.

C H A P. IV.

Of the Officers' Clothing.

Article 1.

IT is his Majesty's order, that all Officers, both upon duty and off, shall always have their Regimentals on, and never make up, or wear any thing else.

Art. 2. Officers shall make up new Regimentals, according to the pattern suit every year, the price of which shall amount to neither more nor less, than the sum limited in the *æconomical Regulations*.

N. B. Every five years the Officers shall have new fasces, which they are constantly to wear round their bodies.

The Officers swords are to be made in *Potsdam*.

The Officers are always to wear their regimental

B b 4

hats,

hats, and to have new ones every year, made according to the pattern.

Art. 3. The Coats are to have capes, facings, and cuffs, with plate-buttons; and to be made with three plaits on each side, and tight sleeves, exactly according to the pattern.

Art. 4. The great-coats are to be made of white cloth, with white stuff linings, and with facings and cuffs of the same colour of the regimental coats, which all Officers are to wear instead of cloaks, when on horseback at the head of their respective Troops, or Squadrons; they must, therefore be made long and wide for that purpose.

Art. 5. The buff-coloured cloth waistcoats, are to be lined with unbleached linnen, and the leathern breeches to be made to fit tight upon the thigh, and in the seat.

Art. 6. The Officers must be always dressed in their uniforms, the sleeves of which are to be laced with gold or silver, together with the velvet capes, which must be of the same colour as the waistcoats.

N. B. The waistcoats are to be made of cloth, of the same colour as the facings of the coats, laced with gold, or silver, according to the pattern, and lined with unbleached linnen.

Art. 7. Officers must always have good regimental sword-knots, which every one, without exception, is to wear, whenever he appears with a sword

sword on, they must therefore at least buy one new sword-knot every year.

N. B. Quarter-masters and Solicitors, not being actual Officers, are not to wear regimental sword-knots, nor to clothe themselves like the Officers.

Art. 8. Officers, when they mount guard in garrison, are always to wear their boots.

Art. 9. Officers are always to have their hair, or wigs, queued with a ribbon; but no Officer shall be suffered to have a wig, unless he cannot possibly wear his hair, in which case, the wig must be made very thin, and short.

Art. 10. The Officers' Horse-furniture must be made of cloth, of the same colour as that of the private men; and is to be embroidered with gold, or silver, the expence of which is not to exceed 50 dollars.

C H A P. V.

Of the Clothing of non-commissioned Officers, Trumpeters, Hautboys, Drummers, and private Men.

Article 1.

THE clothing of the non-commissioned Officers, Trumpeters, Hautboys, Drummers, and

and private Men, shall neither cost more, nor less, than the sum limited in the *economical Regulations*.

Art. 2. The Regiments are to be clothed every year, according to the pattern given, and the clothing be delivered out on the first of May: but if it be his Majesty's pleasure to review them on that day, it must be given out the day before.

Art. 3. Buff-coloured kersey coats, blue cloth waistcoats, and leathern breeches, are to be made according to the pattern, and given out every three years, in time of peace, and every two, in time of war.

N. B. The facings and capes of the coats, are to be of the same colour as the waist-coats, those of the non-commissioned Officers, being laced with gold, or silver, and those of the private Men, with woollen laces, according to the pattern.

The Kettle-drummers, Trumpeters, Hautboys, and Drummers, are to have their clothing, and also the flings of the drums, bound with a livery lace.

Art. 4. White great-coats, with facings and capes of the same colour as the waistcoats, must be made every five years, in time of peace, and every three, in time of war; but they are only to be worn upon a march, or on duty in garrison, when the weather is very severe.

N. B. The great-coats must be made as large in all respects, as the pattern coat, sent to the Regiment.

Art.

Art. 5. The buff-coloured kersey for coats, the blue cloth for waistcoats, and the white, for great-coats, are to be supplied out of the King's magazine in *Berlin*.

N. B. The Colonels shall furnish their Regiments, with all the articles in the small-mounting account, in his Majesty's dominions, and in towns which pay excise.

When the men are suffered to wear their new clothing, they must make breast-cloths, night-caps, and gloves out of the old.

Art. 6. The Captains are to supply the non-commissioned Officers, Trumpeters, Drummers, and private men of their respective Troops, or Squadrons, with a pair of white linnen breeches every year; and with a new black stock, and a hair-band every Spring and Autumn, out of the small-mounting money, allowing the length of four † ells to every hair-band.

N. B. The hair-bands shall be bought in *Potsdam*, paying at the rate of six phennings per ell.

The men are to wear their linnen breeches in the six Summer-months, both on duty and off, when on foot.

Art. 7. In time of peace, the men are to have new hats, with cockades in them, every two years, and every year in time of war; which are to be laced with half-lace: they must be also made of a proper size, be cocked according to the pattern, and made to fit the head tight.

N. B. Re-

† A German Ell is about two feet English measure.

N. B. Regiments are always to have a collection of spare-hats in their store-rooms.

The new hats are to be delivered to the men, on the first of May, unless when it happens, that his Majesty will review them on that day, in which case, they must be given out the day before.

In the Spring of the year, when Regiments assemble to exercise, the old hats are to be cocked a-fresh, and the laces to be cleaned.

Art. 8. The Supernumeraries must be clothed, according to the *æconomical Regulations*, out of the clothing fund; and are to have coats, waistcoats, breeches, great-coats, hats, sword-knots, waist-belts, and boots.

Art. 9. The leathern breeches, pouches, slings, waist-belts, and gloves, must always be clean, and well coloured.

N. B. The slings are to be bound with new woollen lace every third year, in time of peace; and every second, in time of war.

All Captains, and subaltern Officers are required to see, that their men take great care of their clothing.

Art. 10. New horse-furniture, with mohair lace upon it, must be made every six years, in time of peace; and every three, in time of war.

Art. 11. Every five years, waist-belts, and sword-knots are to be made of red Russia leather: that one Troop, or Squadron, may be distinguished from another, the fringe of the sword-knots must be

be of different colours ; and that of the General's, or Colonel's, is always to be white.

Art. 12. The Men must be furnished with one pair of new stockings every three years, in time of peace ; and every year, in time of war : but as they are suffered to sell their old hat-laces, and clothing, they must be obliged to provide themselves with two pairs, every three years, in time of peace.

N. B. The boot-sockings are only to be made half as long as the others, and to cost four groshes.

Art. 13. So many pairs of boots must be made yearly, that the men may be supplied with one pair, every third year, in time of peace ; and every second, in time of war : they are moreover, to be made in such a manner, as to be drawn off, and on, with ease.

N. B. No false calves must be worn in boots.

The boots are to be soled every year ; and to be vamped every third, in time of peace, and every second, in time of war.

Art. 14. The pouches must be made of hog's leather, with tin pipes for 30 cartridges, and the devises in brass.

Art. 15. According to the *æconomical Regulations*, 10 coats, 10 great-coats, 10 waist-coats, 10 pairs of breeches, and 10 hats, are allowed to every Regiment out of the clothing-fund, in time of peace, on account of the deficiencies to arise by

by desertion ; all which the Quarter-master is to take care of, and occasionally to supply those Troops, or Squadrons, having such deficiencies, either with clothing articles, which they want, or the value of them in ready money. In case a Regiment does not lose ten men by desertion within the year, the supernumerary clothing must still be either left in the Quarter-master's custody, or the money remain in the clothing-fund.

N. B. To a Regiment, composed of ten Squadrons, double the above number of coats, waist-coats, breeches, and hats, are to be yearly allowed, for the deficiencies occasioned by desertion.

Art. 16. The quantity of cloth, allowed by ell measure, according to the *economical Regulations*, is quite sufficient ; the regimentals therefore, must be made full, and so as to button in the Winter-time.

Art. 17. Regiments are never to make up new standards, or kettle-drums, till they become absolutely necessary, a report of which must first be made to his Majesty.

Art. 18. In time of peace, the entire camp-equipage must be carefully deposited in the store-rooms ; such as tents, camp colours, kettles, with the cases, cantines, hatchets, shovels, sithes, machines for chopping straw, pickets, and cords ; and any of these articles, which become wanting in time of war, must be paid for extraordinary.

Art.

Art. 19. The Commandants of Regiments, and the Field-Officers, and Captains in general, shall be answerable that every part of the clothing is made conformably to the pattern, and that the men are well fitted.

Art. 20. The Commandants of Regiments shall provide all the clothing articles at the price limited in the *æconomical Regulations*, and take care that every particular is made, and delivered in the best manner, and exactly according to the pattern given; in default of which, his Majesty will render the Commandants responsible, and cashier them.

Art. 21. That the cloth for the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men, may be made good, and properly delivered to the Regiments, his Majesty has appointed his Privy Counsellor A. B. to take the care and direction of it; they are therefore to correspond with him upon the subject, when necessary.

Art. 22. The overplus which may remain, out of the annual allowance for clothing and horses, after they have been paid for according to the *æconomical Regulations*, must be left in the general fund, and not assigned to the Regiments.

Art. 23. In time of peace, Regiments are to manage their clothing in such manner, that the limited quantity may be altogether sufficient to answer, according to the directions given in the *æconomical Regulations*; unless it should happen, by
any

any accident, to be burnt, or lost, in which case, it must be made good again out of the general fund.

N. B. No extraordinaries shall be provided out of the clothing-fund, without his Majesty's express orders; for otherwise the commanding Officers shall pay for them out of their own pockets.

The Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major are to keep the money, which is annually assigned to every Regiment for clothing and recruit-horses, in their custody.

Art. 24. The Privy Counsellor A. B. is to receive all the clothing, which is manufactured in *Berlin*, and the neighbouring towns, from the contractors, to take care of the packing and carriage of it, and to send it to the Regiments.

Art. 25. The Privy Counsellor, in consideration of his own trouble, is to receive the money allotted to defray the expences of the packing and carriage of the clothing to the respective Regiments, without being obliged, at the delivery of it, to give any account of the charges attending it.

Art. 26. All assignments from Regiments to the general fund, must be signed by their respective Generals, or Commandants, otherwise they will not be paid.

Art. 27. The most minute alteration shall not be made in the clothing of the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, Trumpeters, Drummers,
or

or private Men ; but all Regiments are, without any manner of inquiry or hesitation, to clothe themselves exactly according to the pattern sent for that purpose.

C H A P. VI.

Of casting, and recruiting Horses.

Article 1.

AS it has frequently been the practice for Field-Officers, as well as Captains, to employ the horses of their Troops, or Squadrons, upon their own service ; it is his Majesty's command therefore, that no Officer shall presume to do it for the future, upon any pretence whatsoever, but that every one shall constantly keep up his complement. If, nevertheless, any Field-Officer, or Captain, is guilty of a breach of this order, and his Majesty shall get intelligence of it, such Officer will be tried by a Court martial, and not only cashiered, but rendered incapable of ever serving again ; Generals therefore, and commanding Officers of Regiments, must be very attentive to prevent this abuse of the horses, for which they are to be responsible, on pain of incurring his Majesty's highest displeasure.

Art. 2. Regiments are not to purchase more recruit-horses within the year, than the 70, that are allowed by his Majesty ; notwithstanding which,
C c they

they must never have any, that are unfit for service : Whenever it happens, that a Regiment has been unavoidably obliged to exceed that number, a return of extraordinaries must be sent to his Majesty, in the beginning of January.

Art. 3. Every Captain is to keep four coach-horses ; and those moreover, belonging to the Trumpeters, or Drummers, must be equally as good as any others in the Regiment ; that if, at any time, a sudden order for a march should come, and when the annual number is to be cast, the four coach-horses, and those likewise of the Trumpeters, or Drummers, may be taken into the ranks.

N. B. The Trumpeters, or Drummers must be afterwards supplied with such horses as can be met with ; yet they are not to be of any other colour, than black.

Art. 4. All such horses as are no longer fit for service, are to be cast every year after the review, or time of exercise, that the vacant rations, and the money for recruit-horses, may accumulate in the stock-purse.

Art. 5. The price to be given for horses, is directed in the clothing Regulations ; and his Majesty expects them to be provided sound, and of the proper size, without any further charges than what are allowed, for which the Colonels and Commandants of Regiments shall be answerable.

C H A P.

CHAP. VII.

Of preserving Cleanliness and Decency
amongst Soldiers.

Article 1.

REGIMENTS are constantly to be kept in the same good order, the whole year throughout, in which they are at their Review; it is his Majesty's strict command, that the Generals and Commandants of Regiments, the Field-Officers and Captains, and also Officers of all other degrees, shall take care that the Soldiers, especially on duty, and the parade, are dressed in the neatest manner; have clean and good linnen on, gaiters, black stocks, hair queued, and buff-accoutrements well coloured; that either on parades, or in the streets, they never do appear otherwise, than as Soldiers, who are ambitious to look like themselves, and not like boors: On the other hand, when they are suffered to go abroad in a slovenly, irregular manner, and are not always completely dressed in their Regimentals, their respective commanding Officers shall be answerable.

N. B. The linnen breeches must be always clean, and in proper order, when the men appear in them, either on duty, or upon the parade.

The stocks are to be bound tight about the men's necks, and all their washing-articles to be perfectly clean. — In camp, they are to wash for themselves.

The gaiters are to be buckled tight with knee-garters, that they may fit smooth upon the leg.

Art. 2. The hair is to be cut in such a manner, as just to cover the ears; and no non commissioned Officer or Soldier shall be allowed to have a wig, if he can possibly wear his hair; and such as are obliged to wear wigs, shall have them made very thin, and short.

Art. 3. On duty, or the parade, the hair is to be queued close to the head, and the queues are to reach down to the waist.

N. B. When a Soldier, off duty, untwists his hair, he must double it up, and wear it tied close with a short ribbon.

Art. 4. The Soldiers must be habituated to cleanliness in general; must have their hands and faces always well washed, and their whole bodies clean, in order to escape the itch, and all such other cutaneous disorders.

Art. 5. All Soldiers appearing on parades, must have their beards shaved, and their whiskers well trimmed.

Art. 6. The buff- accoutrements, such as the carbine- and cuirass-flings, the pouches, sword-belts, leathern breeches, and gloves, must be well coloured, when the men wear them on duty, or the parade, and afterwards brushed clean, so as not to dirty their clothes.

Art.

Art. 7. The Men are never to appear on duty, or the parade, without their regimental hats on: and whenever they are on horseback, or under arms on foot, they must fix them firm, and even, upon their heads, and not backwards upon their necks.

Art. 8. Every part belonging to the brass- and iron-work, must be always made as bright as possible; and all Officers, and non-commissioned Officers must take pains to inspire their men with an ambition to appear always dressed in a graceful, and soldier-like manner; for if a man takes no delight in his own person, he must consequently have more of the clown remaining in his composition, than of the soldier.

Art. 9. As it is necessary that a Soldier, when he has acquired a good air, should likewise know how to take off his hat properly; the Officers therefore must teach every man to take it off with his left hand, and let it hang down behind his sabre; in that position, to look the Officer, or other person whom he is saluting, in the face, taking care, at the same time, not to stoop, or hang down his head: A Soldier must also learn how to address an Officer, or other person of distinction; or, if he himself is, at any time, accosted by such, to be able to assume a graceful boldness, and to give a reasonable answer.

Art. 10. Soldiers are not to shun their Officers, and seem industrious to avoid their sight; nor run into their quarters, when they happen to come near them; but must stand fast, take off their hats, and wait to see whether they have any orders to give.

C H A P.

C H A P. VIII.

Of preserving these *Regulations* with
Care and Secrecy.*Article 1.*

NO Officer shall shew these *Regulations* to any Officer in foreign service, or other person whatsoever, to whom they don't immediately pertain; much less communicate, or lend them; but must always keep them carefully locked up, so as to be able, whenever he is required, to produce them complete and clean.

Art. 2. When any Officer dies, or is killed, the commanding Officer of the Regiment must take his book of *Regulations* under his own care, and give it to the Officer who succeeds him; and shall be answerable for every one which is, for ever so short a time, wanting in the Regiment.

Art. 3. When subaltern Officers go on party, or leave the Regiment on any other account, their respective Captains must take care of their books of *Regulations* during their absence; and those belonging to the Captains are, on such occasions, to be left in the custody of the commanding Officer; but when a Regiment is to march into action, all the Officers shall leave their books, under lock and key, behind them.

Since



SINCE the original Publication of these *Regulations* in the year 1726, a great many material alterations have been made in the Exercise, the Duty, the Clothing, and other parts; his Majesty therefore has been graciously pleased to give out these new *Regulations* for the CAVALRY, which are dictated, word for word, by himself, and comprehend, in a regular and distinct course, directions at large, for the performance of the whole Exercise, on horseback, and on foot, the Duty in Camp, and in Garrison, together with some further instructions for the Behaviour of Officers in general upon all occasions; so that no event, of however small importance, can at any time happen, in reference to which, his Majesty has not prescribed a certain rule of conduct:

His Majesty therefore strictly charges the Field-Marshals, Generals, Colonels and Commandants of Regiments, Field-Officers, Captains, and Subalterns in general, to make these *Regulations* the standard of their conduct, and at all times to observe them inviolately; on which account they must render themselves familiar, and well acquainted with every part of them, and that more so, than, it appears, they have hitherto done.

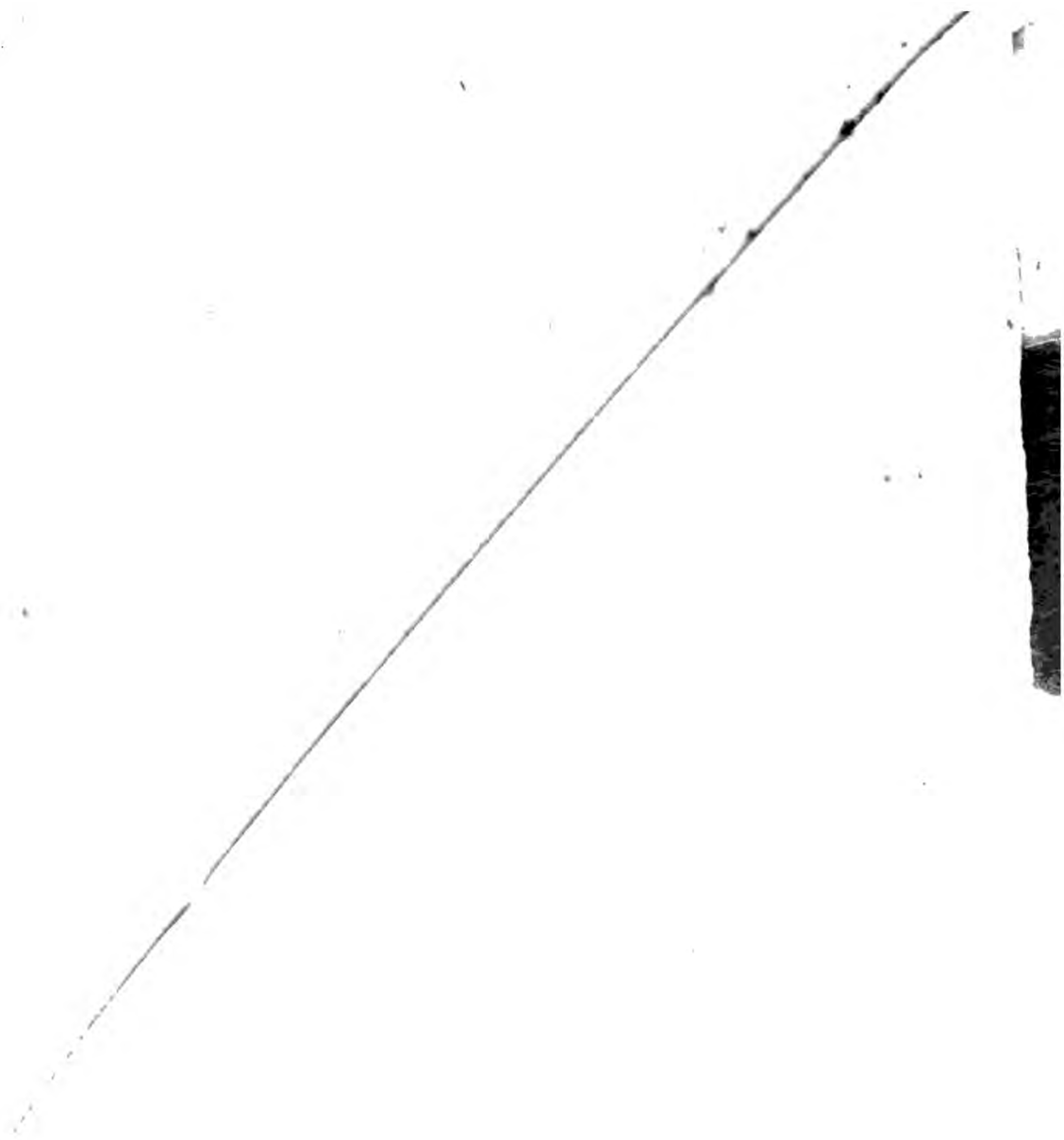
All Officers shall likewise be supplied with copies of these *Regulations*, to the end that no one, who is guilty of the smallest breach of any article contained in them; or is, on any occasion, a stranger to his duty, may be able to plead ignorance, as any
excuse

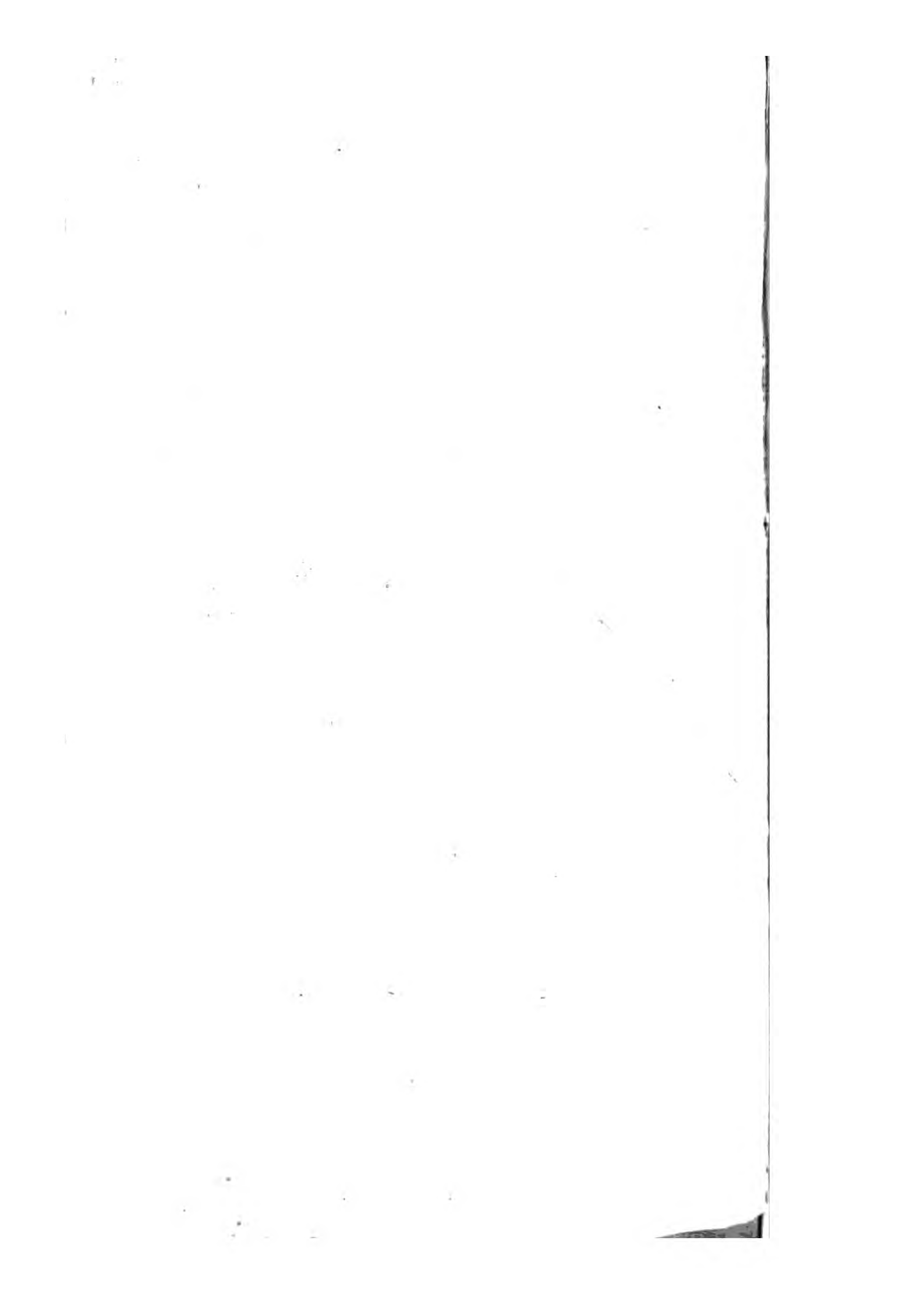
excuse of his crime; but that, when his Majesty cashier him, or orders him any other punishment more suitable to his offence, he may impute his disgrace to his own indiscretion. And his Majesty has so favourable an opinion of his commanding Officers in general, as to believe that they are ambitious to excel one another in the merit of their respective Regiments, in order to make the best, and most satisfactory appearance before him at their Reviews.

All Regiments are therefore to be governed by these *Regulations* with due submission and obedience; and his Majesty is graciously pleased to assure himself, that none of his Officers will neglect, and much less disobey any orders therein given, but, on the contrary, that they will attend to their duty with alacrity and diligence, by doing which, every Officer will recommend himself highly to him, and may depend upon his peculiar favour and protection.



F I N I S.





L.
Prussia



